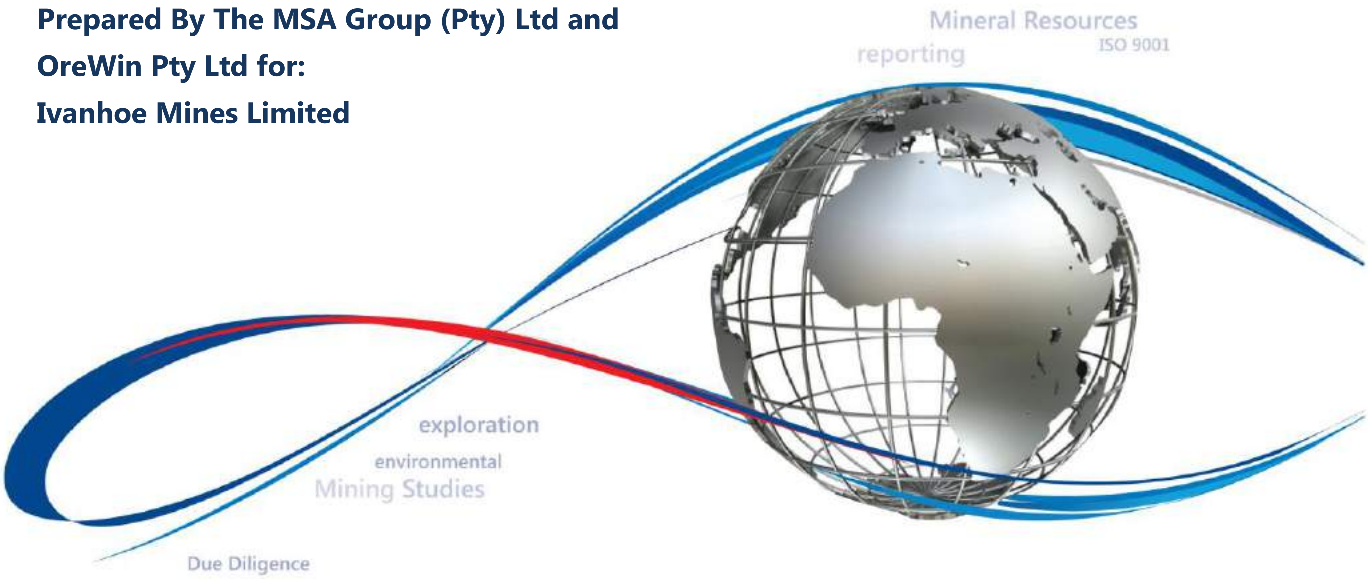
Specialist Consultants to the Mining Industry

Kipushi Project Mineral Resource Estimate, January 2016

NI 43-101 Technical Report
Prepared By The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd and
OreWin Pty Ltd for:
Ivanhoe Mines Limited



Prepared By:

Michael Robertson	Pr.Sci.Nat.	The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Jeremy Witley	Pr.Sci.Nat.	The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Bernard Peters	Fellow AusIMM	OreWin Pty Ltd

Effective Date: 23 January 2016
Report Date: 11 March 2016

MSA Project No.: J2948

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd | Registration No: 2000/002800/07
Tel: +27 (0)11 880 4209 | Fax: +27 (0)11 880 2184 | email: info@msagroupservices.com
20B Rothesay Avenue, Craighall Park, Johannesburg 2196 | PO Box 81356, Parkhurst, 2120, South Africa
Directors: KD Scott, WSM Majola

www.msagroupservices.com

IMPORTANT NOTICE

This notice is an integral component of the Kipushi Project: NI 43-101 Technical Report and Mineral Resource Estimate, Democratic Republic of Congo (Technical Report) and should be read in its entirety and must accompany every copy made of the Technical Report. The Technical Report has been prepared using the Canadian National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects.

The Technical Report was prepared as a National Instrument NI 43-101 Technical Report for Ivanhoe Mines Limited by The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd (MSA), South Africa and OreWin Pty Ltd. The quality of information, conclusions and estimates contained herein is consistent with the level of effort involved in MSA's services, based on: i) information available at the time of preparation, ii) data supplied by outside sources, and iii) the assumptions, conditions, and qualifications set forth in this report. This report is intended for use by Ivanhoe Mines Limited subject to the terms and conditions of its contracts with MSA and OreWin.

The Technical Report should be construed in light of the methodology, procedures and techniques used to prepare the Technical Report. Sections or parts of the Technical Report should not be read or removed from their original context.

Recognizing that Ivanhoe has legal and regulatory obligations, OreWin has consented to the filing of the Technical Report with Canadian Securities Administrators and its System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR). Except for the purposes legislated under Canadian provincial securities law, any other uses of this report by any third party is at that party's sole risk.

THE MSA GROUP

Specialist Consultants to the Mining Industry

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Registration No: 2000/002800/07
Tel: +27 (0)11 880 4209 | Fax: +27 (0)11 880 2184
email: info@msagroupservices.com
20B Rothesay Avenue, Craighall Park, Johannesburg 2196
PO Box 81356, Parkhurst, 2120, South Africa
Directors: KD Scott, WSM Majola

CERTIFICATE OF QUALIFIED PERSON

I, Michael James Robertson, Pr.Sci.Nat. do hereby certify that:

1. I am a Principal Consulting Geologist of:

   The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
   20B Rothesay Avenue
   Craighall Park, Johannesburg, Gauteng, South Africa,
   2196

2. This certificate applies to the technical report titled “Kipushi Project Mineral Resource Estimate, January 2016”, that has an effective date of 23 January 2016 and a report date of 11 March 2016 (the Technical Report).

3. I graduated with a degree in BSc Eng (Mining Geology) from the University of the Witwatersrand in 1985. In addition, I obtained an MSc in Structural Geology from the University of the Witwatersrand in 1989.

4. I am a Professional Natural Scientist (Pr.Sci.Nat.) registered with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions and a member of the Geological Society of South Africa, the Society of Economic Geologists and the Southern African Institute of Mining and Metallurgy.

5. I have worked as a geologist for a total of 25 years since my graduation from university. My experience has included exploration project generation; planning, execution and management of gold and base metal exploration projects throughout Africa and the Middle East; mineral property reviews; exploration program audits; scoping to feasibility study inputs; and independent technical reports on gold and base metal properties for public reporting purposes. Specific zinc experience includes two years in Namibia, two years in the Northern Cape of South Africa and subsequent experience both in Turkey and Mexico over a three year period.

6. I have read the definition of “Qualified Person” set out in National Instrument 43-101 (NI 43-101) and certify that by reason of my education, affiliation with a professional association (as defined in NI 43-101) and past relevant work experience, I fulfil the requirements to be a “Qualified Person” for the purposes of NI 43-101.

7. I visited the Kipushi Project from 20 February 2013 to 22 February 2013 for three days, and from 22 April 2013 to 24 April 2013 for three days.

8. I am responsible for the preparation of all sections of the Technical Report apart from Item 13: Mineral Processing and Metallurgical Testing and Item 14: Mineral Resource Estimates.

9. I have not had prior involvement with the properties that are the subject of the Technical Report.

10. As at the effective date of this Technical Report, and to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, the Technical Report contains all scientific and technical information that is required to be disclosed to make the Technical Report not misleading.

11. I am independent of the issuer according to the definition of independence described in section 1.5 of National Instrument 43-101.

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Registration No: 2000/002800/07
Tel: +27 (0)11 880 4209 | Fax: +27 (0)11 880 2184
email: info@msagroupservices.com
20B Rothesay Avenue, Craighall Park, Johannesburg 2196
PO Box 81356, Parkhurst, 2120, South Africa
Directors: KD Scott, WSM Majola

12. I have read National Instrument 43-101 and Form 43-101F1 and, as at the date of this certificate, those portions of the Technical Report for which I am responsible have been prepared in compliance with this Instrument and Form.

13. I consent to the filing of the Technical Report with any stock exchange and other regulatory authority and any publication by them for regulatory purposes, including electronic publication in the public company files on their websites accessible by the public.

Dated this 11 Day of March, 2016.

Michael J Robertson

THE MSA GROUP

Specialist Consultants to the Mining Industry

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Registration No: 2000/002800/07
Tel: +27 (0)11 880 4209 | Fax: +27 (0)11 880 2184
email: info@msagroupservices.com
20B Rothesay Avenue, Craighall Park, Johannesburg 2196
PO Box 81356, Parkhurst, 2120, South Africa
Directors: KD Scott, WSM Majola

CERTIFICATE OF QUALIFIED PERSON

I, Jeremy Charles Witley, Pr.Sci.Nat. do hereby certify that:

1. I am a Principal Resource Geologist of:

   The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
   20B Rothesay Avenue
   Craighall Park, Johannesburg, Gauteng, South Africa,
   2196

2. This certificate applies to the technical report titled “Kipushi Project Mineral Resource Estimate, January 2016”, that has an effective date of 23 January 2016 and a report date of 11 March 2016 (the Technical Report).

3. I graduated with a degree in BSc Hons (Mining Geology) from the University of the Leicester in 1988. In addition, I obtained an MSc (Eng.) from the University of the Witwatersrand in 2015.

4. I am a Professional Natural Scientist (Pr.Sci.Nat.) registered with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions and a Fellow of the Geological Society of South Africa.

5. I have worked as a geologist for a total of 27 years. I have worked in a number of roles, including senior management, mine geology, exploration projects and Mineral Resource management. I have conducted Mineral Resource estimates, audits and reviews for a wide range of commodities and styles of mineralization.

6. I have read the definition of “Qualified Person” set out in National Instrument 43-101 (NI 43-101) and certify that by reason of my education, affiliation with a professional association (as defined in NI 43-101) and past relevant work experience, I fulfil the requirements to be a “Qualified Person” for the purposes of NI 43-101.

7. I visited the Kipushi Project from 8 September 2014 to 11 September 2014 for four days, and from 11 May 2015 to 13 May 2015 for three days.

8. I am responsible for the preparation of Item 14: Mineral Resource Estimates of the Technical Report.

9. I have not had prior involvement with the properties that are the subject of the Technical Report.

10. As at the effective date of this Technical Report, and to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, the Technical Report contains all scientific and technical information that is required to be disclosed to make the Technical Report not misleading.

11. I am independent of the issuer according to the definition of independence described in section 1.5 of National Instrument 43-101.

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd
Registration No: 2000/002800/07
Tel: +27 (0)11 880 4209 | Fax: +27 (0)11 880 2184
email: info@msagroupservices.com
20B Rothesay Avenue, Craighall Park, Johannesburg 2196
PO Box 81356, Parkhurst, 2120, South Africa
Directors: KD Scott, WSM Majola

12. I have read National Instrument 43-101 and Form 43-101F1 and, as at the date of this certificate, those portions of the Technical Report for which I am responsible have been prepared in compliance with this Instrument and Form.

13. I consent to the filing of the Technical Report with any stock exchange and other regulatory authority and any publication by them for regulatory purposes, including electronic publication in the public company files on their websites accessible by the public.

Dated this 11 Day of March, 2016.

Jeremy C Witley

OreWin

CERTIFICATE of AUTHOR

This Certificate of Author has been prepared to meet the requirements of National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects as published 30 June 2011, Part 8.1.

a) **Name, Address, Occupation:**
Bernard Peters
OreWin Pty Ltd, Level 2/27 Leigh Street, Adelaide South Australia 5000, Australia Mining Engineer, employed as Technical Director – Mining.

b) **Title and Date of Technical Report:**
Kipushi Project Mineral Resource Estimate, January 2016 dated 11 March 2016 (the "Technical Report") having an effective date of 23 January 2016.

c) **Qualifications:**
I graduated from the University of Melbourne, Australia with a Bachelor of Engineering in Mining Engineering in 1986. I am a Fellow of the Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy (no. 201743). I have practised my profession continuously since 1986 and have experience in mining operations and consulting at and for projects in various countries including Australia, Bolivia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Indonesia, Kazakstan, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, Peru, Philippines, Russia and South Africa. I have managed and been responsible for studies with multidisciplinary teams of professionals in the mining industry including geology, mining engineering, and metallurgy. As a result of my qualifications and experience, I am a Qualified Person as defined in National Instrument 43-101.

d) **Site Inspection:**
I visited the property between June 1-3, 2015 and on September 11, 2015.

e) **Responsibilities:**
I am responsible for Sections 1.18 and Section 13 of the Technical Report.

f) **Independence:**
I am independent of Ivanhoe Mines Ltd. in accordance with the application of Section 1.5 of National Instrument 43-101.

g) **Prior Involvement:**
I have been working on various aspects of the studies of the project since 2013.

h) **Compliance with NI 43-101:**
I have read National Instrument 43-101 and Form 43-101FI and the Technical Report has been prepared in compliance with same.

i) **Disclosure:**
As of 11 March 2016, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, the Technical Report contains all scientific and technical information that is required to be disclosed to make the Technical Report not misleading.

Dated: 11 March 2016.

/s/Bernard Peters

Bernard Peters
Technical Director - Mining
OreWin Pty Ltd

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF APPENDICES

1 SUMMARY

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd (MSA) was commissioned by Ivanhoe Mines Limited (Ivanhoe, or the Company) to undertake an updated Mineral Resource estimate and NI 43-101 Technical Report on the Company's Kipushi Project (the Project), located in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC).

The requirement for an updated Technical Report was triggered by the publication of a Mineral Resource estimate on 27 January 2016, following completion of an extensive underground drilling programme at Kipushi Mine.

1.1 Property Description, Location and Ownership

The Project is located adjacent to the town of Kipushi in the southern Haut-Katanga Province in the DRC, adjacent to the border with Zambia. The town of Kipushi is situated approximately 30 km southwest of Lubumbashi, the provincial capital.

Access to the Project area from Lubumbashi is via 30 km of paved road. The town of Kipushi lies partly within the Project area and near the mine's infrastructure and underground access.

Ivanhoe and *La Générale des Carrières et Des Mines* (Gécamines) have a joint venture agreement (JV Agreement) over the Kipushi Project. Ivanhoe and Gécamines respectively own 68% and 32% of the Kipushi Project through Kipushi Corporation SPRL (now Kipushi Corporation SA) (KICO), the mining rights holder of the Kipushi Project. Ivanhoe's interest in KICO was acquired in November 2011 and includes mining rights for copper, cobalt, zinc, silver, lead and germanium, as well as the underground workings and related infrastructure. The JV Agreement was signed on 14 February 2007 and established KICO for the exploration, development, production and product marketing of the Kipushi Project. The JV Agreement document is Partnership Agreement No. 770/11068/SG/GC/2007 (including appendices 1 to 5, A to F, and later amendments 1 to 6) of 14 February 2007 between Gécamines and Kipushi Resources International Limited (KRIL). Ivanhoe purchased the original KRIL 68% interest in the project.

KICO owns a significant amount of underground infrastructure at the Project, including a series of vertical mine shafts and associated head frames to various depths as well as underground mine excavations. The property also hosts surface mining and processing infrastructure, including an old concentrator, offices, workshops, housing, and a connection to the national power grid.

1.2 Mineral and Surface Rights, Royalties and Agreements

KICO holds the exclusive right to engage in mining activities within the Project area through exploitation permit PE12434 which covers 505 hectares and which is valid until April 3, 2024. The permit is held for copper, zinc, silver, lead, cobalt and germanium, was granted under the 2002 Mining Code of the DRC, and is renewable under the terms of the 2002 Mining Code.

KICO holds only the subsurface mineral title to the Project, which includes ownership of the underground workings as well as the various mine shafts and related infrastructure. Gécamines is the owner of the surface rights and surface infrastructure within the Project site at Kipushi mine. KICO has the ability to utilize surface rights on the Project to the extent required in connection with mining operations.

Annual fees are payable by KICO based on the number of cadastral squares held by permit type (surface rights fee) and on the surface area held under permits (land tax), as set out in the 2002 Mining Code. Furthermore, holders of mining rights are subject to taxes, customs and levies defined in the 2002 Mining Code for all mining activities carried out by the holder in the DRC.

According to the 2002 Mining Code, a company holding mining rights is subject to mining royalties. The royalty is due upon the sale of the product and is calculated at 2% of the price of non-ferrous metals sold less the costs of transport, analysis concerning quality control of the commercial product for sale, insurance, and marketing costs relating to the sale transaction. Different rates apply to different types of metals sold.

In addition, pursuant to the JV Agreement, KICO is required to pay to Gécamines a net turnover royalty of 2.5%, which, until the "social loan" as defined in the JV Agreement has been repaid in full (including accrued interest), is payable by way of offset against amounts owed by Gécamines under the social loan.

1.3 History

The Kipushi mine is a past-producing, high-grade underground copper-zinc mine in the Central African Copperbelt, which operated from 1924 until 1993 when, due to a combination of economic and political factors, the mine was put on care and maintenance. The mine produced approximately 60 Mt at 6.78% Cu and 11.03% Zn including, from 1956 through 1978, approximately 12,673 tonnes of lead and 278 tonnes of germanium.

Mining was carried out by a Belgian company, *Union Minière du Haut Katanga* (UMHK), and subsequently by the State-owned mining company Gécamines following nationalisation in 1967. Mining was focussed on the copper-dominant Kipushi Fault Zone. The zinc-dominant Big Zinc was investigated from 1990, but has never been mined.

Between 1974 and 1993, Gécamines drilled a total of 762 holes between 850 and 1 270 metre-levels for a total of 93,000 m.

Prior estimates of the remaining quantity and grade of the mineralization at Kipushi have been carried out by Gécamines (undated), Watts, Griffis and McOuat Limited (WGM) in 1996, and Techpro Mining and Metallurgy (Techpro) in 1997. These represent Historical Estimates in terms of NI 43-101 and should not be regarded as current Mineral Resources. The Historical Estimates should be regarded as no longer relevant, having been superseded by the January 23rd 2016 Mineral Resource stated in this Technical Report.

1.4 Geology and Mineralization

Kipushi is located within the Central African Copperbelt which constitutes a metallogenic province that hosts numerous world-class copper-cobalt deposits both in the DRC and Zambia. The Central African Copperbelt lies within the Lufilian Arc, which comprises a 5-10 km thick sequence of metasedimentary rocks forming the Katanga Supergroup. These rocks were incorporated into a thin-skinned fold and thrust belt which resulted from the convergence of the Congo and Kalahari cratons. In the DRC, the Katangan Supergroup is defined by the Roan, Nguba and Kundulungu Groups.

The Kipushi Project is located within Nguba Group rocks on the northern limb of the regional west-northwest trending Kipushi Anticline which straddles the border between Zambia and the DRC. The mineral deposits at Kipushi are an example of carbonate-hosted copper-zinc-lead mineralization hosted in pipe-like fault breccia zones, as well as tabular zones.

Mineralization is focused at the intersection of the Kakontwe and Katete Formations of the Nguba Group with a north-northeast striking 70° west dipping discontinuity known as the Kipushi Fault, which terminates the northern limb of the anticline. The Kipushi Fault has been interpreted by KICO as a syn-sedimentary growth fault which was reactivated during the Lufilian Orogeny. Mineralization occurs in several distinct settings known as the Kipushi Fault Zone (copper, zinc and mixed copper-zinc mineralization both as massive sulphides and as veins), the Copper *Nord Riche* zone (mainly copper but also mixed copper-zinc mineralization, both massive and vein-style), the *Série Récurrente* zone (disseminated to veinlet-style copper mineralization), and the Big Zinc zone (massive zinc with local copper mineralization).

Copper-dominant mineralization in the form of chalcopyrite, bornite and tennantite is characteristically associated with dolomitic shales both within the Kipushi Fault Zone and extending eastwards along, and parallel to, bedding planes within the Katete Formation. Zinc-dominant mineralization in the Kakontwe Formation occurs as massive, irregular, discordant pipe-like bodies replacing the dolomite host and exhibiting a steep southerly plunge from the fault zone.

1.5 Drilling

No other relevant exploration work, other than drilling, has been carried out by KICO on the Project. Following dewatering of the underground workings in 2014, KICO carried out an underground drilling programme of over 25,000 m with the objective of confirming historical information, conducting infill drilling, testing for deeper extensions to the Big Zinc and gaining an improved understanding of geology and controls on mineralization.

Drilling was carried out on the same 15 m spaced sections used by Gécamines and comprised twin holes, infill holes and step-out exploration holes. Drilling was carried out from existing underground excavations mainly on the 1,150 and 1,272 metre-levels. A total of 97 holes have been drilled by KICO for 25,419 m. Drilling was mostly NQ-TW (51 mm diameter) size with holes inclined downwards at various orientations to intersect specific targets within the Big Zinc, Fault Zone, *Nord Riche* and *Série Récurrente*. Along the section lines, the drillholes intersected mineralization between 10 m and 50 m apart within the Big Zinc and adjacent Fault Zone, and up to 100 m apart in the deeper parts of the Fault Zone.

All aspects of the drilling programme, surveying, core handling, logging and sampling were carried out under documented standard operating procedures (SOPs) specifically developed for the Project. Core recovery averaged 99.14% and visual inspection by the Qualified Person (QP) confirmed the core recovery to be excellent.

The quality and quantity of lithological, collar and downhole survey data collected in the KICO drilling programme is sufficient, in the opinion of the QPs (Mike Robertson and Jeremy Witley), to support Mineral Resource estimation.

1.6 Sample Preparation, Analysis and Security

All sample preparation, analyses and security measures were carried out under standard operating procedures set up by KICO for the Kipushi project. These procedures have been examined by the QP and are in line with industry good practice.

Sample lengths were a nominal 1 m, later adjusted to 2 m, with allowance for reduced intervals to honour mineralization styles and lithological contacts. Half core samples were collected continuously through the identified mineralized zones. Sample preparation was completed by staff from KICO and its affiliated companies at their own internal containerised laboratories at Kolwezi and Kamoa. These facilities were inspected by the QP.

Samples were dried at between 100°C and 105°C and crushed to a nominal 70% passing 2 mm. Subsamples (800 g to 1000 g) were collected by riffle splitting and milled to 90% passing 75 µm. Crushers and pulverisers were flushed with barren quartz material and cleaned with compressed air between each sample. Grain size monitoring tests were conducted on 5% of the samples and the results recorded. Representative subsamples were air freighted to the selected accredited primary laboratory, Bureau Veritas Minerals (BVM) in Perth, Australia for analysis.

All samples were analysed by sodium peroxide fusion and ICP-OES and ICP-MS finish for Zn, Cu, S, Pb, Ag, As, Cd, Co, Ge, Re, Ni, Mo, V and U; by aqua regia and ICP-MS finish for Ag and Hg; and by lead collection fire assay and ICP-OES finish for Au, Pt and Pd.

A comprehensive chain of custody and quality assurance and quality control (QAQC) programme was maintained by KICO throughout the underground drilling campaign comprising drillholes KPU001 to KPU097. Input into the QAQC programme and SOP was provided by MSA through a comprehensive re-sampling campaign on Gécamines drill core. The QAQC programme was monitored by Dale Sketchley of Acuity Geoscience Ltd, and the results reviewed by MSA.

A check assay programme was carried out using the Intertek Genalysis laboratory in Perth. Check samples were selected on a random basis, representing 10% of the total sample population, after excluding all samples that reported less than 0.1% Zn and 0.1% Cu, and supplemented by additional samples that reported higher germanium and rhenium.

In the opinion of the QP, the sample chain of custody, sample preparation, sample analysis and QAQC procedures adopted by KICO are acceptable and consistent with industry standard practice, and the results suitable for the estimation of Mineral Resources.

1.7 Data Verification

A comprehensive re-sampling programme was undertaken on historical Gécamines drill core from the Big Zinc and Kipushi Fault Zone, with the objective of verifying historical assay results and to quantify confidence in the historical assay database for its use in Mineral Resource estimation. This work was overseen by MSA and was preceded by an “orientation” sampling and assay programme to determine the optimum sampling and assay approach. The re-sampling programme included a full industry standard QAQC programme.

KICO undertook re-marking and re-logging of all the available Gécamines drillholes that intersected the Big Zinc, using standardised logging codes, which were also used in the KICO underground drilling programme. Density determinations carried out using the Archimedes method concluded that density, and hence tonnage, was understated by an average of 9% by Gécamines who adopted a regression formula approach for density.

Eleven historical Gécamines holes were twinned during the KICO underground drilling programme. In general, the zinc, copper and lead values compared well overall between the twin holes and the original holes. More detailed grade resolution was observed in the KICO holes as nominal sample lengths of 1 m and 2 m were used compared to an average sample length of 3.44 m for the Gécamines holes.

In the opinion of the QP, the results of the core re-sampling programme confirm that the assay values reported by Gécamines are reasonable and can be replicated within a reasonable level of error by international accredited laboratories under strict QAQC control.

1.8 Metallurgical Testwork

Ivanhoe has undertaken two sets of testwork. The first set in 2013 included mineralogy, comminution and flotation testing. The second set in 2015 was to examine Dense Media Separation (DMS). A review of potential process routes was undertaken by Ivanhoe that suggested given the favourable density differences in massive sulphides and the gauge material Heavy Media or DMS was considered as a highly likely alternate to flotation, potentially providing lower capital and operating costs.

The Big Zinc was the primary focus of this campaign. Six holes intersecting the Big Zinc were selected so as to represent most mineralization types in the Big Zinc, and sample intervals composited for metallurgical and mineralogical investigations. Approximately 407 kg of half core material was submitted for the testwork. The target head grade for the composite sample was 37% Zn, based on the assayed intervals of the drillhole cores. The main minerals encountered in order of abundance were sphalerite (67%), galena (2%) and chalcopyrite (1%); the main gangue minerals in the sample were dolomite (18%), pyrite (8%) and quartz (3%).

Dense medium separation (DMS) washability profiles were evaluated at three feed crush sizes using a combination of heavy liquid separation (HLS) and shaking tables. Performance across the HLS and the shaking table, as a function of feed, is the same for all three crush sizes. The HLS circuit achieved 99% recovery at a concentrate grade ~55% Zn, while the shaking table achieved 61% recovery at a concentrate grade ~55% Zn. The difference in overall performance of the three crush sizes is the mass percentage reporting to the -1 mm fines fraction processed through the less efficient shaking tables. The relatively low mass percentage of the -20 mm crush size material reporting to the shaking tables makes this result far superior, only 10% of feed bypass the HLS compared to 22% and 32% of the -12 mm and -6 mm samples respectively.

1.9 Mineral Resource Estimates

The Mineral Resource estimate was based on geochemical analyses and density measurements obtained from the cores of diamond drillholes, which were completed by KICO between March 2014 and November 2015, with the cut-off date for data included in this estimate being 16

December 2015. In addition to the KICO drillholes, Gécamines drilled numerous diamond drillholes during the operational period of the mine. A number of the Gécamines holes were examined and re-sampled and a database was compiled from the historical data. A programme of twin and infill drilling demonstrated that the Gécamines data were overall unbiased compared to the KICO data and where the quality of the data was considered acceptable, these data were incorporated into the Mineral Resource estimate. Using the data from the drillholes, a three dimensional block model was created and the metal grades and density were estimated using ordinary kriging. In total 107 Gécamines holes and 84 KICO holes intersected the Mineral Resource and were used for the grade estimate.

The Mineral Resource was estimated using The Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum (CIM) Best Practice Guidelines and is reported in accordance with the 2014 CIM Definition Standards, which have been incorporated by reference into National Instrument 43-101 – Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects (NI 43-101). The Mineral Resource is classified into the Measured, Indicated and Inferred categories as shown in Table 1-1 for the predominantly zinc-rich bodies and in Table 1-2 for the predominantly copper-rich bodies.

For the zinc-rich zones the Mineral Resource is reported at a base case cut-off grade of 7.0% Zn, and the copper rich zones at a base case cut-off grade of 1.5% Cu. Given the considerable revenue which will be obtained from the additional metals in each zone, MSA considers that mineralization at these cut-off grades will satisfy reasonable prospects for economic extraction. It should be noted that Mineral Resources that are not Mineral Reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability and the economic parameters used to assess the potential for economic extraction is not an attempt to estimate Mineral Reserves, the level of study so far carried out being insufficient with which to do so.

Table 1-1
Kipushi Zinc-Rich Mineral Resource at 7% Zn cut-off grade, 23 January 2016

Zone	Category	Tonnes (millions)	Zn %	Cu %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
Big Zinc	Measured	3.59	38.39	0.67	0.36	18	17	54
	Indicated	6.60	32.99	0.63	1.29	20	14	50
	Inferred	0.98	36.96	0.79	0.14	7	16	62
Southern Zinc Zone	Indicated	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Inferred	0.89	18.70	1.61	1.70	13	15	43
Total	**Measured**	**3.59**	**38.39**	**0.67**	**0.36**	**18**	**17**	**54**
	Indicated	**6.60**	**32.99**	**0.63**	**1.29**	**20**	**14**	**50**
	Measured & Indicated	**10.18**	**34.89**	**0.65**	**0.96**	**19**	**15**	**51**
	Inferred	**1.87**	**28.24**	**1.18**	**0.88**	**10**	**15**	**53**
			Contained Metal Quantities					
Zone	**Category**	**Tonnes (millions)**	**Zn Pounds (millions)**	**Cu Pounds (millions)**	**Pb Pounds (millions)**	**Ag Ounces (millions)**	**Co Pounds (millions)**	**Ge Ounces (millions)**
Big Zinc	Measured	3.59	3,035.8	53.1	28.7	2.08	0.13	6.18
	Indicated	6.60	4,797.4	91.9	187.7	4.15	0.20	10.54
	Inferred	0.98	797.2	17.1	3.0	0.23	0.03	1.96
Southern Zinc Zone	Indicated	0.00	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Inferred	0.89	368.6	31.8	33.5	0.38	0.03	1.23
Total	**Measured**	**3.59**	**3,035.8**	**53.1**	**28.7**	**2.08**	**0.13**	**6.18**
	Indicated	**6.60**	**4,797.4**	**91.9**	**187.7**	**4.15**	**0.20**	**10.54**
	Measured & Indicated	**10.18**	**7,833.3**	**144.9**	**216.4**	**6.22**	**0.33**	**16.71**
	Inferred	**1.87**	**1,168.7**	**49.6**	**36.8**	**0.61**	**0.06**	**3.21**

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur.*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*
5. *The cut-off grade calculation was based on the following assumptions: zinc price of 1.02 USD/lb, mining cost of 50 USD/tonne, processing cost of 10 USD/tonne, G&A and holding cost of 10 USD/tonne, transport of 55% Zn concentrate at 375 USD/tonne, 90% zinc recovery and 85% payable zinc.*

Table 1-2
Kipushi Copper-Rich Mineral Resource at 1.5% Cu cut-off grade, 23 January 2016

Zone	Category	Tonnes (Millions)	Cu %	Zn %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
Fault Zone	Measured	0.14	2.78	1.25	0.05	19	107	20
	Indicated	1.01	4.17	2.64	0.09	23	216	20
	Inferred	0.94	2.94	5.81	0.18	22	112	26
Série Récurrenté	Indicated	0.48	4.01	3.82	0.02	21	56	6
	Inferred	0.34	2.57	1.02	0.06	8	29	1
Fault Zone Splay	Inferred	0.35	4.99	15.81	0.005	20	127	81
Total	**Measured**	**0.14**	**2.78**	**1.25**	**0.05**	**19**	**107**	**20**
	Indicated	**1.49**	**4.12**	**3.02**	**0.07**	**22**	**165**	**15**
	Measured & Indicated	**1.63**	**4.01**	**2.87**	**0.06**	**22**	**160**	**16**
	Inferred	**1.64**	**3.30**	**6.97**	**0.12**	**19**	**98**	**33**

			Contained Metal Quantities					
Zone	**Category**	**Tonnes (Millions)**	**Cu Pounds (Millions)**	**Zn Pounds (Millions)**	**Pb Pounds (Millions)**	**Ag Ounces (Millions)**	**Co Pounds (Millions)**	**Ge Ounces (Millions)**
Fault Zone	Measured	0.14	8.5	3.8	0.2	0.09	0.03	0.09
	Indicated	1.01	93.2	59.1	1.9	0.75	0.48	0.64
	Inferred	0.94	61.1	120.9	3.8	0.68	0.23	0.79
Série Récurrenté	Indicated	0.48	42.4	40.5	0.2	0.32	0.06	0.09
	Inferred	0.34	19.4	7.7	0.4	0.09	0.02	0.01
Fault Zone Splay	Inferred	0.35	38.9	123.3	0.0	0.23	0.10	0.92
Total	**Measured**	**0.14**	**8.5**	**3.8**	**0.2**	**0.09**	**0.03**	**0.09**
	Indicated	**1.49**	**135.7**	**99.6**	**2.1**	**1.08**	**0.54**	**0.73**
	Measured & Indicated	**1.63**	**144.1**	**103.4**	**2.3**	**1.16**	**0.58**	**0.82**
	Inferred	**1.64**	**119.4**	**251.8**	**4.3**	**1.00**	**0.35**	**1.73**

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur.*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*
5. *The cut-off grade calculation was based on the following assumptions: copper price of 2.97 USD/lb, mining cost of 50 USD/tonne, processing cost of 10 USD/tonne, G&A and holding cost of 10 USD/tonne, 90% copper recovery and 96% payable copper.*

The Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource for the zinc-rich bodies has been tabulated using a number of cut-off grades as shown in Table 1-3, and the Inferred Mineral Resource in Table 1-4.

Table 1-3
Kipushi Zinc-Rich bodies Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off Zn%	Tonnes (Millions)	Zn %	Contained Zn Pounds (Millions)	Cu %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
5	10.46	34.12	7,870.0	0.65	0.95	19	15	50
7	**10.18**	**34.89**	**7,833.3**	**0.65**	**0.96**	**19**	**15**	**51**
10	9.78	35.99	7,757.4	0.63	0.98	19	15	52
12	9.50	36.72	7,689.4	0.62	1.00	19	15	53
15	9.06	37.85	7,559.1	0.59	1.01	20	15	54

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur.*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*

Table 1-4
Kipushi Zinc-Rich bodies Inferred Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off Zn%	Tonnes (Millions)	Zn %	Contained Zn Pounds (Millions)	Cu %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
5	1.89	27.98	1,168.8	1.19	0.88	10	15	53
7	**1.87**	**28.24**	**1,165.7**	**1.18**	**0.88**	**10**	**15**	**53**
10	1.82	28.85	1,154.8	1.17	0.88	10	15	54
12	1.75	29.47	1,139.8	1.15	0.87	10	15	55
15	1.56	31.42	1,082.1	1.08	0.83	10	15	57

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*

The Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource for the copper-rich bodies has been tabulated using a number of cut-off grades as shown in Table 1-5,and the Inferred Mineral Resource in Table 1-6.

Table 1-5 Kipushi Copper-Rich bodies Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016								
Cut Off **Cu%**	**Tonnes** **(Millions)**	**Cu** **%**	**Contained Cu Pounds** **(Millions)**	**Zn** **%**	**Pb** **%**	**Ag** **g/t**	**Co** **ppm**	**Ge** **g/t**
1.0	2.56	3.00	169.2	2.01	0.05	17	114	11
1.5	**1.63**	**4.01**	**144.1**	**2.87**	**0.06**	**22**	**160**	**16**
2.0	1.17	4.92	126.6	3.66	0.08	26	202	19
2.5	0.95	5.54	115.8	4.06	0.08	29	227	20
3.0	0.82	5.99	108.0	4.32	0.08	30	244	20

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*

Table 1-6 Kipushi Copper-Rich bodies Inferred Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016								
Cut Off **Cu%**	**Tonnes** **(Millions)**	**Cu** **%**	**Contained Cu Pounds** **(Millions)**	**Zn** **%**	**Pb** **%**	**Ag** **g/t**	**Co** **ppm**	**Ge** **g/t**
1.0	2.40	2.64	139.8	5.85	0.09	16	79	29
1.5	**1.64**	**3.30**	**119.4**	**6.97**	**0.12**	**19**	**98**	**33**
2.0	1.24	3.81	104.2	7.29	0.13	20	109	33
2.5	0.90	4.40	87.6	8.01	0.13	21	113	34
3.0	0.68	4.95	74.0	8.38	0.15	21	118	34

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*

The Mineral Resource was limited to deeper than approximately 1,150 m below surface, extensive mining having taken place in the levels above. Below 1,150 m, some mining has taken place, which has been depleted from the model for reporting of the Mineral Resource. The maximum depth of the Mineral Resource of 1,810 m below surface is dictated by the location of the diamond drilling data. The Mineral Resource occurs close to the DRC-Zambia Border and the Mineral Resource has been constrained to the area considered to be within the DRC.

The Mineral Resource estimate has been completed by Mr. J.C. Witley (BSc Hons, MSc (Eng)) who is a geologist with 27 years' experience in base and precious metals exploration and mining as well as Mineral Resource evaluation and reporting. He is a Principal Resource Consultant for The MSA Group (an independent consulting company), is a member in good standing with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP) and is a Fellow of the Geological Society of South Africa (GSSA). Mr. Witley has the appropriate relevant qualifications and experience to be considered a "Qualified Person" for the style and type of mineralization and activity being undertaken as defined in National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure of Mineral Projects.

The Mineral Resource estimate reported as at 23 January 2016 is the first Mineral Resource for Kipushi reported in accordance with CIM. A Historical Estimate was completed by Techpro Mining and Metallurgy (Techpro) in 1997 and reported by IMC Group Consulting Limited (IMC) in a NI 43-101 Technical Report entitled "Kipushi Project, Democratic Republic of Congo, September 2012".

1.10 Interpretation and Conclusions

The KICO underground drilling programme has confirmed that zinc and copper mineralization extend below the limit of the historical estimates to at least 1,825 m below surface, being the deepest intersection recorded (drillhole KPU079). The mineralization is open at depth.

The geological work carried out by KICO has resulted in enhanced understanding of the nature and controls on the Kipushi mineralization.

In addition to confirming substantial widths and zinc grades within the Big Zinc, some of the KICO holes have also intersected zones of high-grade copper and precious metals within the Big Zinc. A high grade massive sulphide lense within the *Série Récurrenté* and a germanium-rich zone that occurs as a splay off the Fault Zone at depth have also been defined.

A substantial Mineral Resource has been defined at Kipushi. The high grade nature of the Big Zinc has been confirmed and the extent of this zone has been considerably increased from that defined by previous workers.

1.11 Recommendations

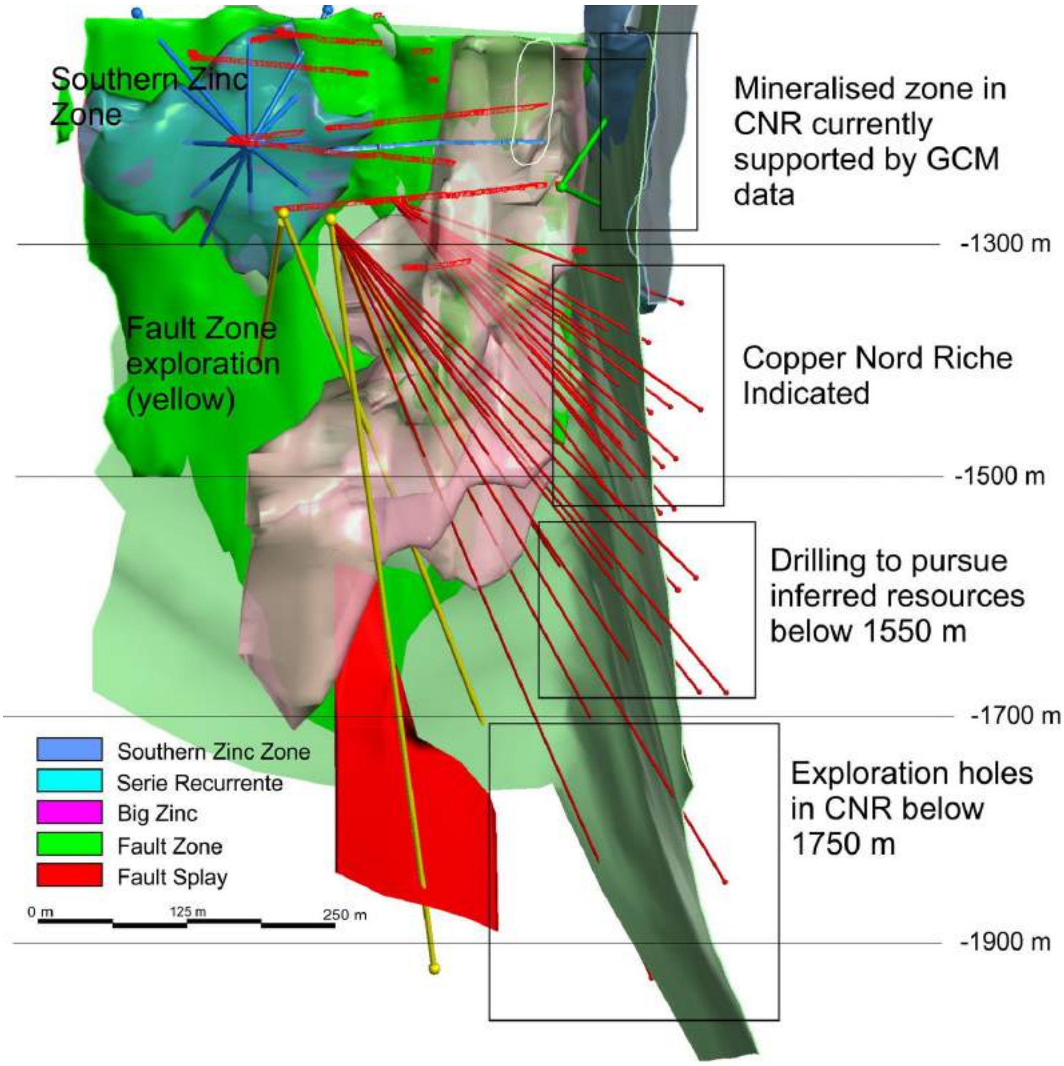
Approximated 16,500 m of drilling are recommended to achieve both an Indicated Mineral Resource category on the Southern Zinc and Copper *Nord Riche* mineralized zones and to explore additional parts of the deposit that were not drilled during the 2014-2015 drilling campaign. Zones with the planned drilling are shown in Figure 1-1 and a summary of the total metres is shown in Table 1-7.

Four holes are planned in the upper portion of the Copper *Nord Riche* to support previous Gécamines drilling and bring this to an Indicated Mineral Resource category. Similarly, the Southern Zinc Zone is not supported by Gécamines drilling and an additional 13 holes are recommended to achieve an Indicated Mineral Resource category.

Further drilling is required to explore the Fault Zone and Copper *Nord Riche* at depth. The morphology of the deposit, together with the proximity of the supporting infrastructure to the steeply plunging mineralised zone limit the options for deep pierce points within the Kipushi Resource.

The cost of the drilling programme is estimated at US$3.96 million. In the opinion of the QP (Michael Robertson), the recommended work programme is considered appropriate and warranted in order to upgrade the Mineral Resource status of the Kipushi Project.

Figure 1-1
Planned drilling at Kipushi



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Table 1-7
Planned drilling by zone

	Planned drilling metres to achieve Mineral Resource class		
Mineralised Zone	**Indicated**	**Inferred**	**Exploration Drilling**
Copper *Nord Riche* (supporting Gécamines drilling)	704		
Copper *Nord Riche*	4 589	4 301	2 390
Fault Zone			2 806
Southern Zinc Zone	1 571		

2 INTRODUCTION

2.1 Scope of Work

The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd (MSA) was commissioned by Ivanhoe Mines Limited (Ivanhoe, or the Company) to undertake an updated Mineral Resource estimate and NI 43-101 Technical Report on the Company's Kipushi Project (the Project), located in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). Ivanhoe, through its holding in KICO, has a 68% interest in the Project.

This Technical Report has been prepared to comply with disclosure and reporting requirements set forth in the Canadian National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* (the Instrument, or NI 43-101), Companion Policy 43-101CP, and Form 43-101F1 Technical Report.

All monetary figures expressed in this report are in United States of America dollars (US$) unless otherwise stated.

2.2 Terms of Reference and Purpose of the Report

This Technical Report was commissioned by Ivanhoe in order to comply with TSX rules to file a NI 43-101 Technical Report within 45 days following the January 27, 2016 announcement of a Mineral Resource estimate on the Project. The Mineral Resource estimate was the result of a ~25,000 m underground drilling programme and a thorough validation exercise carried out on historical data.

2.3 Principal Sources of Information

MSA has based its review of the Project on information and data provided by KICO, along with other relevant published and unpublished data. The QPs (Michael Robertson and Jeremy Witley) have endeavoured, by making all reasonable enquiries, to confirm the authenticity and completeness of the technical data upon which the Technical Report is based. A final draft of the report was provided to Ivanhoe, along with a written request to identify any material errors or omissions prior to lodgement.

The Project at Kipushi Mine represents a series of spatially related and defined copper-zinc-lead mineral deposits on which Historical Estimates have been carried out. The deposits are located largely below the level of previous mining which saw the Kipushi Fault Zone being mined from surface to approximately the 1,220 m level over a period of 68 years. Of these deposits, the zinc-dominant Kipushi Big Zinc deposit, occurring in the footwall to the Fault Zone, has never been mined since its discovery in the late 1980s.

The background information to the Project used by QP (Michael Robertson) was largely obtained from a NI 43-101 Technical Report compiled by IMC Group Consulting Limited (IMC) (Kelly, *et al.*, 2012) and from the Annual Information Form for the years ended December 31, 2013 and December 31, 2014 compiled by Ivanhoe (Ivanhoe Mines, 2014a, 2015a).

The QP (Michael Robertson) considers that the Project has been acquired on the basis of sound technical merit. The Project is also considered to be sufficiently prospective, subject to varying degrees of exploration risk, to warrant further exploration and assessment of its economic potential, consistent with the proposed work programme and cost breakdown.

A recommended work programme and associated cost breakdown by phase is presented under Item 26. The Project has progressed on the basis of an evolved understanding of the relevant mineral deposit model and its application to the Project.

Section 13 is based on reports provided by Ivanhoe on the metallurgical testwork and results of the testwork by Mintek Metallurgical Laboratory (Mintek) in Johannesburg, South Africa. This includes a review of the testwork procedures and results, and a visit in June 2015 to the Mintek Metallurgical Laboratory (Mintek) in Johannesburg, South Africa by an OreWin's Principal Process Consultant.

The Technical Report has been prepared on the basis of information available up to and including January 23rd, 2016.

2.4 Personal Inspection

A site visit to the Project was undertaken from February 20 to 23, 2013 for a period of three days and from April 22 to 24, 2013 for a further three days by Michael Robertson, a Qualified Person (QP) as that term is defined in NI 43-101. The initial visit included a personal inspection of historical exploration records and drill core from the Project. During the subsequent visit, re-sampling of selected historical cores was undertaken as part of a data verification exercise.

Jeremy Witley, a QP as that term is defined in NI 43-101, visited the Project between September 8 and 11, 2014 and May 11 to 13, 2015. Mr Witley is responsible for the estimation of the Kipushi Mineral Resource.

Bernard Peters, B. Eng. (Mining), FAusIMM (201743), employed by OreWin Pty Ltd as Technical Director – Mining, a QP as that term is defined in NI 43-101, visited the Kipushi Mine Site between June 1 and 3, 2015 and on September 11, 2015. Mr Peters was responsible for Section 1.18 and Item 13 of this report.

2.5 Qualifications, Experience and Independence

MSA is a provider of exploration, geology, mineral resource and reserve estimation, mining and environmental consulting services to the mining industry and financial institutions, and has been providing such services since 1983. This report has been compiled by Michael Robertson and Jeremy Witley, who are professional geologists.

Mr Robertson is a Principal Consultant with MSA and has the appropriate relevant qualifications, experience, competence and independence to act as a "Qualified Person" as that term is defined in NI 43-101. Mr Robertson has 25 years' experience, the majority of which has involved the exploration and evaluation of gold and base metal properties throughout Africa, as well as the Middle East, Australia, Canada, Mexico, Russia and the CIS states.

Mr Witley is Principal Mineral Resource Consultant with MSA and has the appropriate relevant qualifications, experience, competence and independence to act as a "Qualified Person" as that term is defined in NI 43-101. Mr Witley has 27 years' experience in Mineral Resource estimation, exploration and mine geology.

OreWin is an independent mining consultancy offering high-quality, practical, tailored solutions to the minerals sector in the disciplines of geology, mining engineering and metallurgy. Ivanhoe engaged OreWin to provide Item 13 Mineral Processing and Metallurgical Testing.

Mr Peters is employed by OreWin as Technical Director Mining and has over 30 years of experience. He is a Fellow of the Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy (no. 201743) He has practised his profession continuously since 1986 and has experience in mining operations and consulting at and for projects in various countries including Australia, Bolivia, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Indonesia, Kazakstan, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, Peru, Philippines, Russia and South Africa. He has managed and been responsible for studies with multidisciplinary teams of professionals in the mining industry including geology, mining engineering, and metallurgy. As a result of his qualifications and experience, Mr Peters is a Qualified Person as defined in National Instrument 43-101.

Neither MSA, OreWin, nor the QPs, as authors of this report, have or have previously had, any material interest in Ivanhoe or the mineral properties in which Ivanhoe has an interest. Our relationship with Ivanhoe is solely one of professional association between client and independent consultant. This report is prepared in return for professional fees based upon agreed commercial rates and the payment of these fees is in no way contingent on the results of this report.

3 RELIANCE ON OTHER EXPERTS

The QPs (Michael Robertson and Jeremy Witley), as authors of this report, have relied on the following sources of information in respect of mineral tenure and environmental matters pertaining to the Project area.

3.1 Mineral Tenure

The QP (Michael Robertson) has not independently verified, nor is he qualified to verify, the legal status of the Project, including ownership of the Project area, surface rights, underlying property agreements or permits. The QP (Michael Robertson) has fully relied upon, and disclaim responsibility for, the following information provided by KICO in respect of the mineral tenure status of the Project:

- A copy of the exploitation permit *("Certificat d'Exploitation") PE12434* dated July 22, 2011, issued by *Cadastre Minière* (CAMI).
- A translation, from the original French into English, of the Kipushi Joint Venture Agreement No. 770/11068/SG/GC/2007 dated February 14, 2007 between Gécamines and Kipushi Resources International Limited (KRIL). Ivanhoe purchased the original KRIL 68% interest in the project.

This Technical Report has been prepared on the assumption that the Project will prove lawfully accessible for exploration and evaluation.

3.2 Environmental Matters

Similarly, the QP (Michael Robertson) is not qualified to provide comment on environmental matters associated with the Project. The QP (Michael Robertson) has fully relied on information provided by KICO, which relates to the environmental aspects of the Project.

No warranty or guarantee, be it express or implied, is therefore made by the QP (Michael Robertson) with respect to the completeness or accuracy of the legal or environmental aspects of this document, which are discussed under Item 4 and Item 20. Comment on these aspects should not be relied on by the reader.

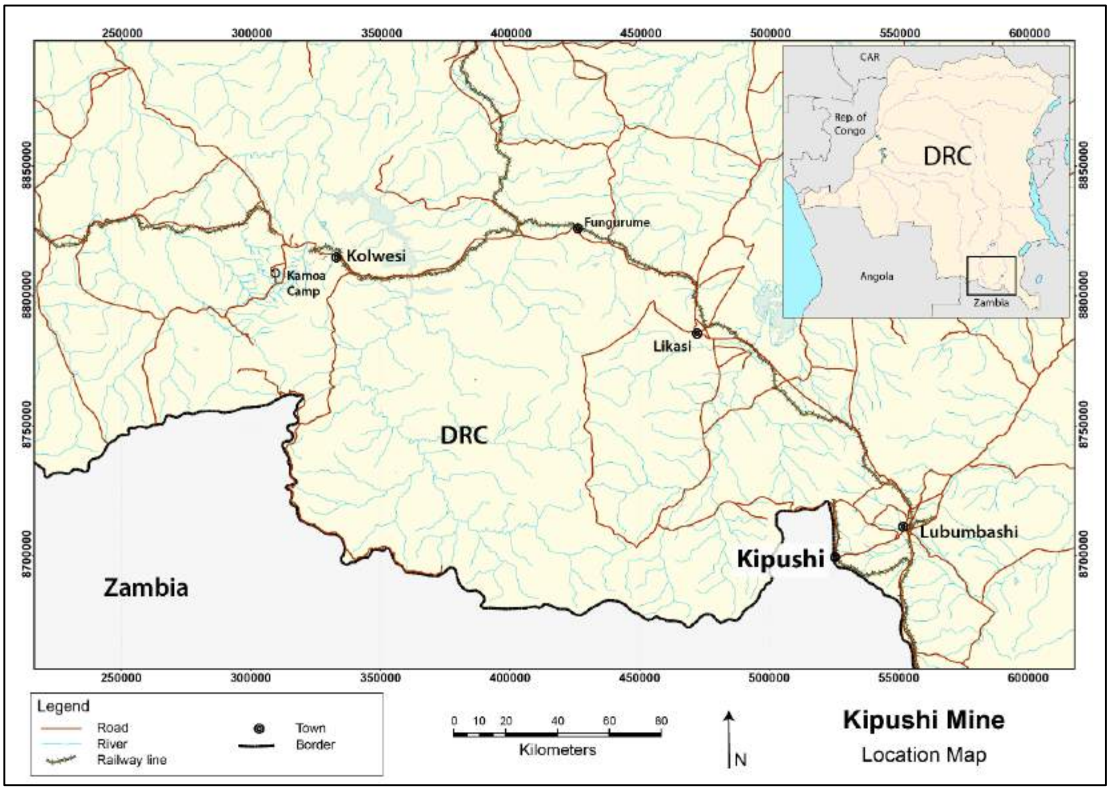
4 PROPERTY DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION

4.1 Location

The Project is located adjacent to the town of Kipushi in the southeastern part of Haut-Katanga Province in the DRC, adjacent to the border with Zambia (Figure 4-1). Kipushi town is situated approximately 30 km southwest of Lubumbashi, the capital of Haut-Katanga Province. The geographical location of the mine is 11° 45′ 36″ south and 27° 14′ 13″ east.

The Kipushi mine is a past-producing, high-grade underground copper–zinc mine in the Central African Copperbelt, which operated from 1924 to 1993. The mine produced approximately 60 Mt at 6.78% Cu and 11.03% Zn including, from 1956 through 1978, approximately 12,673 tonnes of lead and 278 tonnes of germanium (Ivanhoe Mines, 2014a). Mining at Kipushi began as an open-pit operation but by 1926 had evolved into an underground mine, working down to the 1,220 metre-level. In 1993 the mine was put on care and maintenance due to a combination of economic and political factors.

Figure 4-1
Location of Kipushi near Lubumbashi in the DRC



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

4.2 Project Ownership

Ivanhoe Mines Ltd. (Ivanhoe) and *La Générale des Carrières et Des Mines* (Gécamines) have a joint venture agreement (JV Agreement) over the Kipushi Project. Ivanhoe and Gécamines respectively own 68% and 32% of the Kipushi Project through Kipushi Corporation SPRL (now Kipushi Corporation SA) (KICO), the mining rights holder of the Kipushi Project. Ivanhoe's interest in KICO was acquired in November 2011 and includes mining rights for copper, cobalt, zinc, silver, lead and germanium as well as the underground workings and related infrastructure, inclusive of a series of vertical mine shafts. The JV Agreement was signed on 14 February 2007 and established KICO for the exploration, development, production and product marketing of the Kipushi Project. The JV Agreement document is Partnership Agreement No. 770/11068/SG/GC/2007 (including appendices 1 to 5, A to F, and later amendments 1 to 6) of 14 February 2007 between Gécamines and Kipushi Resources International Limited (KRIL). Ivanhoe purchased the original KRIL 68% interest in the project.

4.3 Mineral Tenure

KICO holds the exclusive right to engage in mining activities within the Project area through an exploitation permit granted under the DRC Mining Code, enacted by Law No. 007/2002 of July 11, 2002 (the 2002 Mining Code). The exploitation permit PE12434 covers 505 hectares and is valid until April 3, 2024. This permit is renewable under the terms of the 2002 Mining Code. The location of the permit is shown in Figure 4-2 and the boundary coordinates of the permit area are given in Table 4-1. Exploitation permits are made up of cadastral squares (*carrés*) each of 84,955 hectare areas; any parts of cadastral squares extending beyond the DRC borders are excluded from the licences.

Exploitation permit (PE12434) initially granted KICO the right to mine and process copper and cobalt from the Project. On June 15, 2012, the Company submitted an application to CAMI, which resulted in the extension of the permit PE12434 for the extraction and processing of zinc, silver, lead and germanium.

Mineralization at the Project extends at depth beyond the DRC border into Zambia. KICO does not have an agreement with the Zambian government which would permit it to explore for or exploit any Mineral Resources that may be located within Zambia. The current Mineral Resource estimates presented for the Project only make reference to those Mineral Resources which are located within the DRC.

Figure 4-2

Location of Exploitation Permit 12434, Kipushi mine and Kipushi town

Note that the Exploitation Permit is further restricted by the International border with Zambia (Shown in the figure as an approximately north-south trending white line)

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015); Google Earth imagery

Table 4-1

Boundary coordinates for Exploitation Permit 12434 comprising the Kipushi Project (Coordinate System: Geographic WGS84)

Permit No.	Type	Area (Ha)	Grant Date	Expiry Date	Point	Longitude			Latitude		
						Degree	Minute	Second	Degree	Minute	Second
PE12434	Exploitation Permit	505.0	July 02, 2011	April 03, 2024	1	27	14	0.00	-11	47	0.00
					2	27	13	49.86	-11	47	0.00
					3	27	13	40.75	-11	46	39.96
					4	27	13	39.32	-11	45	0.00
					5	27	14	30.00	-11	45	0.00
					6	27	14	30.00	-11	46	30.00
					7	27	14	0.00	-11	46	30.00

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

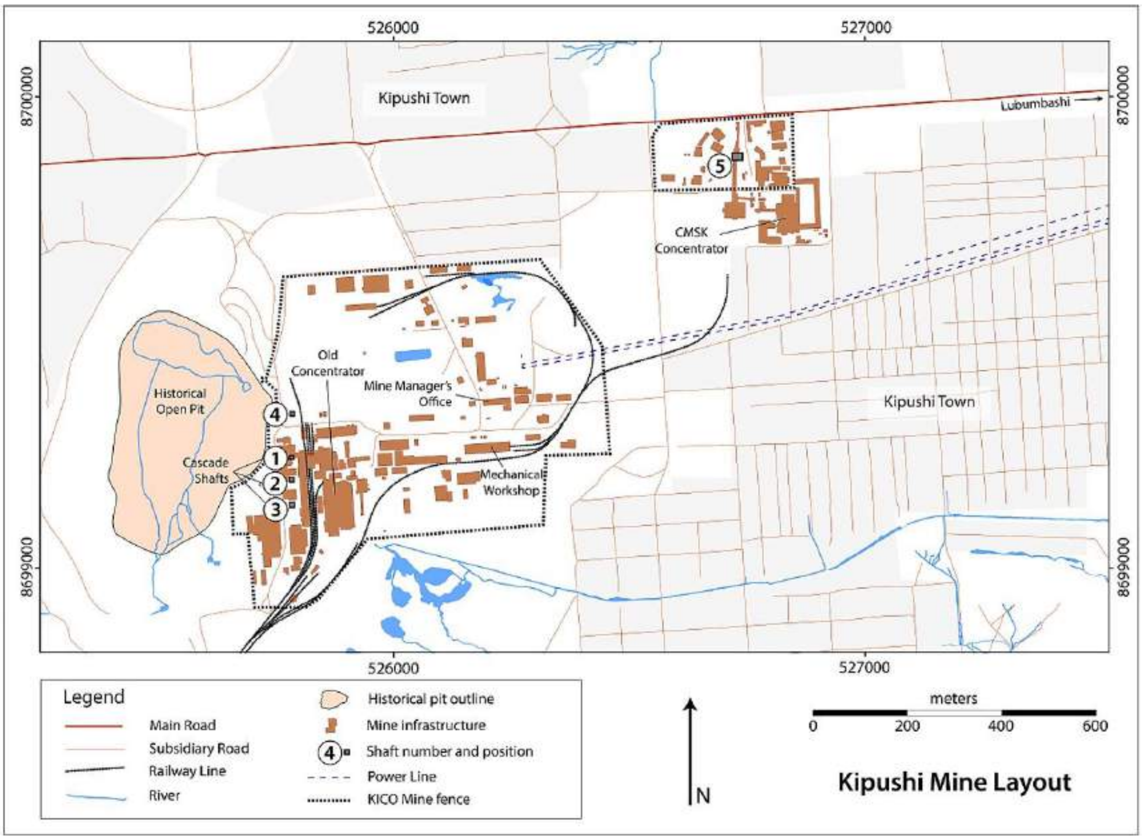
4.4 Surface Rights

According to the JV Agreement, KICO holds only the subsurface mineral title to the Project, which includes ownership of the underground workings as well as the various mine shafts and related infrastructure. Gécamines is the owner of the surface rights and surface infrastructure within the Project site at Kipushi mine, including but not limited to: (i) the old concentrator; (ii) the "new" concentrator; (iii) the waste and tailings sites; and (iv) the historical open-pit. The Kipushi Mine layout is shown in Figure 4-3.

There are a number of surface related activities occurring on the land which constitutes the Project, including the operation of the "new" concentrator, in which KICO has no ownership or control.

KICO has the ability to utilize surface rights on the Project to the extent required in connection with mining operations.

Figure 4-3
Kipushi Mine Layout



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

4.5 Property Obligations and Agreements

A number of payments are required to keep the exploitation permits in good standing. Two fees levied annually are based on the number of cadastral squares held by permit type (surface rights fee) and on the surface area held under permits (land tax), as set out in the 2002 Mining Code. As

Exploitation Permit 12434 is *force majeure* as at the date of this report, KICO will pay these fees only when the *force majeure* is over. The *force majeure* condition was imposed when the mine flooded in early 2011 due to a catastrophic failure on the 1200 metre level pump station in Shaft #5 as a result of lack of maintenance. KICO requested the *force majeure* from the Mines Department, which suspends some regulatory requirements and discounts the SNEL power cost. The *force majeure* condition does not restrict rehabilitation works and KICO will request lifting of the *force majeure* condition when all refurbishment works are complete.

In addition, pursuant to the JV Agreement, KICO is required to pay to Gécamines a net turnover royalty of 2.5%, which, until the "social loan" as defined in the JV Agreement has been repaid in full (including accrued interest), is payable by way of offset against amounts owed by Gécamines under the social loan.

4.6 Environmental Liabilities

The property was the subject of an environmental audit by the Ministry of Environment, Nature Conservation, and Tourism, in August 2011, who reported that all environmental obligations attached to the relevant licences had been discharged. KICO commissioned a summary environmental baseline study, which was completed by Golder Associates in August 2012. The study serves as an "environmental snapshot" as to the state of the property upon the Ivanhoe acquisition in November 2011.

4.7 Significant Risk Factors

The Project may be impacted by changes in mining legislation such as a percentage increase in the royalty regime, incorporation of a super profits tax, and if the Haut-Katanga Province increases the provincial tax on mining concentrate products destined for export.

4.8 Mining Legislation in the DRC

4.8.1 Mineral Property and Title

The following review of mineral legislation in the DRC is summarised from Hubert (2013), Kelly *et al.*, (2012) and the 2002 Mining Code.

The principal legislation governing mining activities in the DRC is the 2002 Mining Code (Law No. 007/2002 dated July 11, 2002. The applications of the 2002 Mining Code are provided by the Mining Regulations enacted by Decree No. 038/2003 of March 26, 2003 (the 2003 Mining Regulations). The legislation incorporates environmental requirements.

All mineral rights in the DRC are held by the State, and the holder of mining rights gains ownership of the mineral products for sale. Under the 2002 Mining Code, mining rights are regulated by Exploration Permits (*Permis de Recherches Minières* or PR), Exploitation Permits (*Permis d'Exploitation* or PE) small-scale Exploitation Permits and tailings Exploitation Permits *(Certificat d'Exploitation des Rejets* or PER*)*.

Under the 2003 Mining Regulations, the DRC is divided into mining cadastral grids using a WGS84 geographic coordinate system. The grid defines uniform quadrangles or cadastral squares (*carrés*), each 84.955 ha in area. The perimeter of a mining right is in the form of a polygon consisting of entire contiguous quadrangles subject to the limits relating to the borders of the DRC and those relating to reserved prohibited and protected areas as set forth on the 2003 Mining Regulations. Perimeters are exclusive and may not overlap, except where the Mining Code & Regulations authorize overlapping.

4.8.2 Exploitation Permits

Exploitation permits are valid for 30 years and renewable for 15 year periods until the end of the mine's life, provided the conditions laid out in the 2002 Mining Code have been met. Granting of a permit is dependent on a number of factors that are defined in the 2002 Mining Code, including:

- Proof of the existence of a deposit which can be economically exploited, by presenting a feasibility study, accompanied by a technical framework plan for the development, construction, and exploitation of the mine.
- Proof of the existence of the financial resources required for execution of the project, according to a financing plan for the development, construction and exploitation of the mine, as well as the rehabilitation plan for the site when the mine is closed. This plan specifies each type of financing, the sources of planned financing and justification of their possible availability.
- Pre-approval of the project's Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) and the Environmental Management Protection Plan (EMPP).
- Transfer to the DRC State 5% of the shares in the registered capital of the company applying for the licence. These shares are free of all charges and cannot be diluted.

As an Exploitation Permit already exists on the property and is derived from mining rights under prior legislation, these obligations are not applicable to the property.

The Exploitation Permit, as defined in the 2002 Mining Code, allows the holder the exclusive right to carry out, within the perimeter over which it has been granted, and during its term of validity, exploration, development, construction and exploitation works in connection with the mineral substances for which the permit has been granted, and associated substances if the holder has applied for an extension. So long as a perimeter is covered by an Exploitation Permit, no other application for a mining or quarry right can be granted within such perimeter. The holder of an Exploitation Permit has the right to extend its permit to include those minerals which it can demonstrate are "associated minerals". Associated minerals are those in situ minerals that are necessarily extracted simultaneously with the minerals listed in the original permit. In addition, it entitles the holder, without restriction, to:

- Enter the exploitation perimeter to conduct mining operations.
- Build the installations and infrastructure required for mining exploitation.
- Use the water and wood within the mining perimeter for the requirements of the mining exploitation, while complying with the requirements set forth in the EIS and the EMPP.
- Use, transport and freely sell the products originating from within the exploitation perimeter.

- Proceed with concentration, metallurgical or technical treatment operations, as well as the transformation of the mineral substances extracted from the deposit within the exploitation perimeter.
- Proceed to carry out works to extend the mine.

An Exploitation Permit expires at the end of the appropriate term of validity if no renewal is applied for in accordance with the provisions of the 2002 Mining Code, or when the deposit that is being mined is exhausted.

4.8.3 Sale of Mining Products

Under the 2002 Mining Code, the sale of mining products which originate from the Exploitation Permit is "free", meaning that the holder of an Exploitation Permit may sell any licensed products to a customer of choice, at "prices freely negotiated". However, the authorisation of the appropriate DRC Minister is required under the 2002 Mining Code for exporting unprocessed ores for treatment outside the DRC. This authorization will only be granted if the holder who is applying for it demonstrates at the same time:

- The fact that it is impossible to treat the substances in the DRC at a cost which is economically viable for the mining project.
- The advantages for the DRC if the export authorization is granted.

4.8.4 Surface Rights Title

The DRC State has exclusive rights to all land, but can grant surface rights to private or public parties. Surface rights are distinguished from mining rights, since surface rights do not entail the right to exploit minerals or precious stones. Conversely, a mining right does not entail any surface occupation right over the surface, other than that required for the operation.

The 2002 Mining Code states that subject to any rights of third parties over the surface concerned, the holder of an exploitation mining right has, with the authorisation of the governor of the province concerned, and on the advice of the Administration of Mines, the right to occupy within a granted mining perimeter the land necessary for mining and associated industrial activities, including the construction of industrial plants and dwellings, water use, dig canals and channels, and establish means of communication and transport of any type.

Any occupation of land that deprives surface right holders from using the surface, or any modification rendering the land unfit for cultivation, entails an obligation on the part of the mining rights holder to pay fair compensation to the surface right holders. The mining rights holder is also liable for damage caused to the occupants of the land in connection with any mining activity, even if such an activity has been properly permitted and authorised.

4.8.5 Royalties

According to the 2002 Mining Code a company holding an Exploitation Permit is subject to mining royalties. The royalty is due upon the sale of the product and is calculated at 2% of the price of non-ferrous metals sold less the costs of transport, analysis concerning quality control of the commercial product for sale, insurance, and marketing costs relating to the sale transaction.

Different rates apply to different types of metals sold. The holder of the mining licence will benefit from a tax credit equal to one third of the mining royalties paid on products sold to an entity carrying out transformation of mineral substances located in the DRC. Mining royalties paid may be deducted for income tax purposes.

4.8.6 Environmental Obligations

The 2002 Mining Code contains environmental obligations that have to be met as part of the mining right application. These are the preparation of an EIS and an EMPP. The 2002 Mining Code provides for a biennial environmental audit. If a company does not pass this audit, it may lose its permit. Upon mine closure, shafts must be filled, covered or enclosed, and a certificate obtained confirming compliance with environmental obligations under the terms of the approved EIS and EMPP.

5 ACCESSIBILITY, CLIMATE, LOCAL RESOURCES, INFRASTRUCTURE AND PHYSIOGRAPHY

Information in this section is largely sourced from Ivanhoe Mines (2015a).

5.1 Accessibility

The town of Kipushi and Kipushi mine are located adjacent to the international border with Zambia, approximately 30 km southwest of Lubumbashi, the capital of Haut-Katanga Province and nearest major urban centre (Figure 4-1). Kipushi is connected to Lubumbashi by a paved road. The closest public airport to the Project is at Lubumbashi where there are daily domestic, regional and international scheduled flights.

5.2 Climate and Physiography

The Lubumbashi region is characterised by a humid subtropical climate with warm rainy summers and mild dry winters. Most rainfall occurs during summer and early autumn (November to April) with an average annual rainfall of 1,287 mm. Average annual maximum and minimum temperatures are 28°C and 14°C respectively.

Historical mining operations at Kipushi Mine operated year-round, and it is expected that any future mining activities at the Project would also be able to be operated on a year-round basis.

The Katanga region occupies a high plateau covered largely by Miombo (*Brachystegia sp.*) woodland and savannah. Kipushi lies at approximately 1,350 m above mean sea level with a gently undulating topography with shallow valleys created by small streams. The international border with Zambia is defined by a watershed. On the DRC side, a prominent drainage basin in developed, flowing to the east into the Kafubu River.

5.3 Local Resources and Infrastructure

The town of Kipushi lies partly within the Project area and near the mine's infrastructure and underground access (Figure 4-2). A large proportion of the local population was employed at the mine until the suspension of mining operations in 1993. A number of mine personnel have been retained on the care and maintenance operations and many of these people still live in the area. As of December 31, 2014, KICO employed approximately 400 people.

Although the town of Kipushi is theoretically administered independently of the mine, Gécamines runs the schools, hospital, water supply sewage treatment and other government services (Kelly *et al.*, 2012). Over the considerable time that the mine has been in operation, the town and mine have become interlinked with operations very proximal to habitations.

A link with the rail system in neighbouring Zambia provides access to the ports of Dar es Salaam in Tanzania, Maputo in Mozambique and Durban in South Africa. Presently however, much of the products from mines in the Katanga Province are transported by road.

KICO owns a significant amount of underground infrastructure at the Project, including a series of vertical mine shafts and associated head frames to various depths as well as underground mine excavations. The newest mine shaft (the "Number 5 Shaft") is 1,240 m deep with a lowest operating level at the 1,150 metre-level. It provides the primary access to the lower levels of the mine. It has three independent friction hoists, and all compartments remain operational. The condition of the facility is fair, but will require a refurbishment program to bring the whole mine shaft to a working standard. The Number 5 Shaft is approximately 1.5 km from the main mining zone. There are a series of crosscuts and ventilation infrastructure that are still in working condition. The underground infrastructure also includes a series of pumps. Until 2011 the pumps de-watered down to a pump station at the 1,206 metre-level. This station failed in 2011 and water level rose to 851 metre-level at its peak. Since KICO has assumed responsibility for ongoing rehabilitation and pumping, the water level has been lowered, allowing for underground diamond drilling.

The property also hosts surface mining and processing infrastructure, including an old concentrator, offices, workshops, housing, and a connection to the national power grid. Electricity is supplied by the state power company of the DRC, *Société Nationale d'Electricité* (SNEL), via two transmission lines from Lubumbashi. Pylons are in place for a third transmission line. All of the surface infrastructure is owned by Gécamines.

The bulk of the Mineral Resources and exploration potential lie adjacent to or below the 1,150 metre-level main haulage, which can be accessed from the Number 5 Shaft. This shaft has provided the main access to the mine since suspension of production and remains operational since completion of dewatering at the end of 2013. Hanging wall drill stations are present on the 1,132 metre-level and 1,272 metre-level, and an underground decline is developed in the footwall to a depth of 1,327 m. The re-establishment of operations at the Project would require refurbishment of underground access via the Number 5 Shaft, and construction of new processing and disposal facilities. Process water for any planned mining operation could be obtained from the underground pumping operations.

5.4 Surface Rights

Surface rights (which are distinct from mining rights) for the Project are held by Gécamines. KICO, as holder of the exploitation permit, has, subject to the applicable approvals, authorizations and the payment of any requisite compensation, the right to occupy that portion of the surface as is within the Exploitation Permit area and which is necessary for mining and associated industrial activities, including the construction of industrial plants and the establishment of a means of communication and transport.

In order to access the surface infrastructure, KICO has entered into a rental contract with an affiliate of Gécamines pursuant to which KICO will be required to pay rental fees of $100,000 per month when production at the Project commences in exchange for the exclusive right to use the surface infrastructure held by Gécamines. Currently, KICO is paying rental fees of $30,000 per month to lease the areas required for its operations.

6 HISTORY

6.1 Prior Ownership and Ownership Changes

Prior to formal mining at Kipushi, the site was the subject of artisanal mining by means of pits and galleries. The artisanal workings were visited in August 1899 by an exploration mission of the Tanganyika Concessions Ltd led by George Grey and were first named "Kaponda" after the local chieftain and later "Kipushi" in reference to the nearby river and village (Heijlen *et al.*, 2008).

A Belgian company, *Union Minière du Haut Katanga* (UMHK) started prospecting in the area in 1922 and commenced production in 1924. UMHK reportedly operated on a more or less uninterrupted basis for 42 years, initially by open pit until 1926 and subsequently by the underground methods of sub-level caving and sub-level stoping. The mine was originally known as the Prince Leopold Mine. In 1967, with the formation of the State-owned mining company Gécamines, the renamed Kipushi mine was nationalised. Mining of the Kipushi Fault Zone and *Nord Riche* continued under Gécamines management until 1993, reaching the 1,150 metre-level, when, due to a lack of hard currency to purchase supplies and spares, the mine was put on care and maintenance.

Following an open bidding process in October 2006, United Resources AG commenced negotiations with Gécamines which resulted in the February 2007 joint venture agreement (the "Kipushi Joint Venture Agreement") and the creation of the joint venture company, KICO. The Kipushi Joint Venture Agreement was novated to the Kipushi Vendor by United Resources AG via a novation act in May 2008 and Kipushi Vendor replaced United Resources AG as a party to the Kipushi Joint Venture Agreement.

In November 2011, Ivanhoe acquired 68% of the issued share capital of KICO through Kipushi Holding, from the Kipushi Vendor, the result of which the Kipushi Vendor transferred all of its rights and obligations under the Kipushi Joint Venture Agreement to Ivanhoe. Gécamines hold the remaining 32% interest in KICO.

The Big Zinc, adjacent to the Fault Zone on the footwall side, was discovered shortly before the mine suspended production, and has never been mined, although the current decline extends to the 1,327 metre-level. The mine flooded in early 2011 due to a lack of pumping maintenance over an extended period. Following acquisition of the 68% interest in KICO by Ivanhoe, KICO assumed responsibility for ongoing rehabilitation and pumping.

6.2 Historical Exploration

Between 1974 and 1993, Gécamines drilled a total of 762 holes between 850 and 1,270 metre-levels for a total of 93,000 m (Kelly *et al.*, 2012). Approximately 7,500 samples were submitted to the mine laboratory for routine analysis. The extent of Gécamines drilling below 1,042 metre-level is shown in plan view in Figure 6-1.

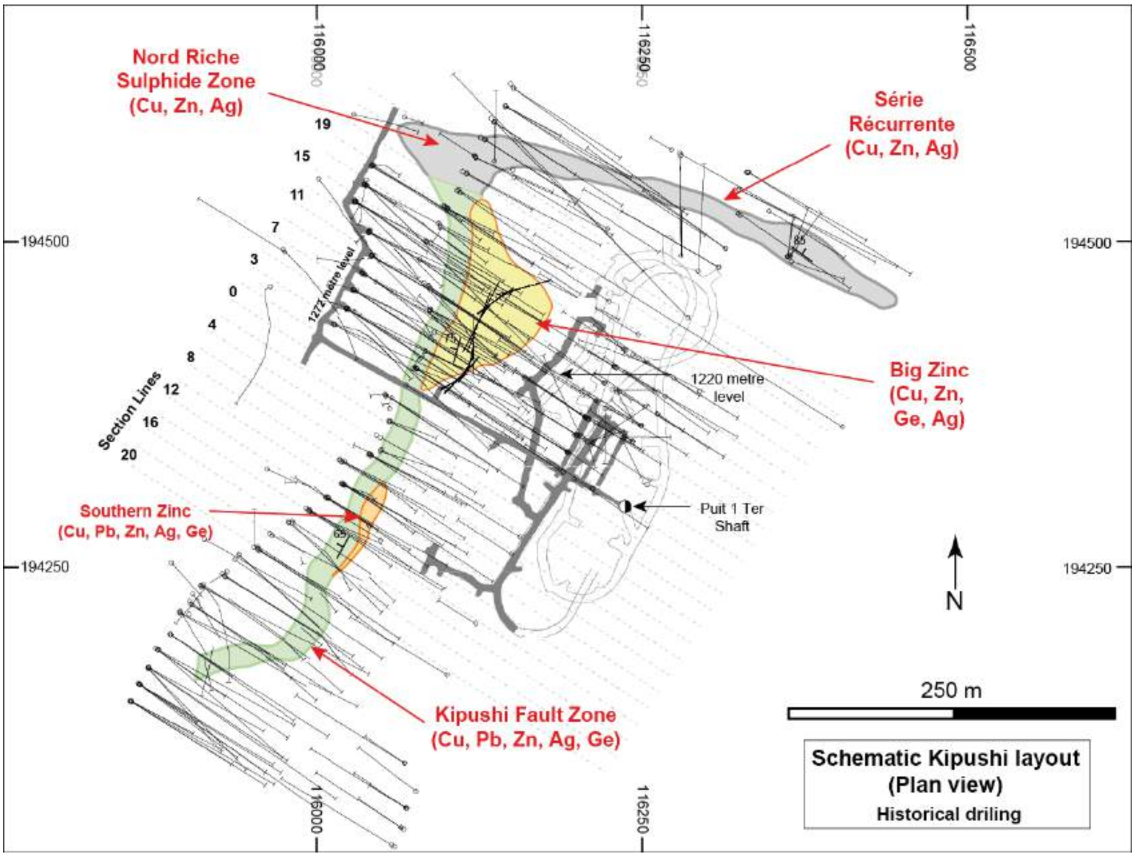
As at 1993, exploration drilling had traced the main Kipushi Fault Zone to approximately 1,600 metre-level.

The Big Zinc was investigated by diamond drilling carried out by Gécamines between 1990 and 1993. Mineralization below 1,150 metre-level was largely explored through the drilling of about 200 cored drillholes from two drill drives located in the hanging wall of the deposit at 1,132 metre-level and 1,272 metre-level (Figure 6-1). The Big Zinc zone was intersected by 84 of these holes. There was also some underground sampling between 1,150 metre-level and 1,295 metre-level. On 1,270 metre-level, holes were drilled to intersect the Fault Zone and the Big Zinc on fans at 15 m spaced sections with holes inclined at between -25° and -90° (Figure 6-1). On the basis of a limited number of deeper holes, Gécamines extrapolated its estimates of grade and tonnage down to the 1,800 metre-level.

Core is preserved from 49 Gécamines holes that intersected the Big Zinc and is stored on site at Kipushi. Most of the core is in reasonable condition as shown in Figure 6-2. In general, only mineralized intersections were retained by Gécamines, with only minor barren or "*stérile*" zones preserved in the core trays. The basis for defining *stérile* zones was a visual cut-off of 1% Cu and/or 7% Zn. The *stérile* zones contain variable visible sphalerite mineralization in the form of veins and disseminations. Only minimal *stérile* material was available for a re-sampling programme carried out by KICO and discussed under Item 12.

Figure 6-1

Extent of Gécamines underground drilling at the Kipushi Project (below 1,042 metre-level)



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 6-2

Examples of the state of preservation of Gécamines drillcore: (A) base of the copper-rich Kipushi Fault Zone and rare preservation of "*stérile*" dolomite in the footwall, and (B) massive zinc-rich mineralization within the Big Zinc (Drillhole 1270/9/V+30/-40/SE)

6.3 Historical Estimates

Historical Estimates below the 1,150 metre-level were established through Gécamines' core drilling and limited underground sampling. IMC (Kelly, *et al*., 2012) concluded that the drill section spacing at 15 m intervals along the Kipushi Fault Zone was adequate for resource definition considering the strength of mineralization continuity; however they could not determine the reliability of the data as no rigorous internal or external check assaying procedures were used and not all the core was retained.

Three Historical Estimates have been prepared on the Kipushi Project. These were undertaken by Gécamines (undated), Watts, Griffis and McOuat Limited (WGM) in 1996, and Techpro Mining and Metallurgy (Techpro) in 1997. In addition, Zinc Corporation of South Africa (Zincor) is reported to have completed an estimate in 2001 (Kelly *et al.,* 2012). These estimates were reportedly all based on Gécamines' drilling and production information, and utilized Gécamines' historical cut-off grade criteria.

IMC reviewed the WGM and Techpro estimates and considered the 1997 Techpro estimate to be the most relevant and reliable (Kelly *et al.,* 2012). IMC considered the 1997 Techpro estimate to conform to the CIM "Mineral Resource Reserve Classification: Categories, Definitions and Guidelines" published in September 1996, but that the estimate would not meet current JORC or CIM standards.

It must be noted that these estimates are Historical Estimates in terms of NI 43-101 and were prepared before KICO acquired an interest in the Project. These Historical Estimates should not be regarded as current Mineral Resource or Mineral Reserve estimates. A Qualified Person has not done sufficient work to classify the Historical Estimates as current Mineral Resources. The Historical Estimates should be regarded as no longer relevant, having been superseded by the January 23, 2016 Mineral Resource stated in this Technical Report.

6.3.1 Gécamines Estimation Methodology

Gécamines adopted a "classical" estimation approach as described in Kelly *et al.,* (2012). Underground drilling was initially carried out along 15 m spaced sections along drifts developed parallel to the mineralized zone. Subsequently, sub-level crosscuts were driven at 10 m intervals across the mineralized zone, allowing for detailed sampling of the zone. The drillhole and crosscut sampling were used to construct a series of 1:500 scale level plans spaced at 12.5 m vertical intervals, onto which grade categories were traced, using a minimum mining width of 5 m. The areas on the level plans were then projected halfway to the next level (i.e. 6 m) for volume estimation and subsequent tonnage estimates using the regression formula:

Density = 2.85 + 0.039 x %Cu + 0.0252 x %Pb + 0.0171 %Zn

Although assays were completed for iron, there appears to have been no density factor generally applied for pyrite.

The Gécamines density factor was used mainly for mineralized zones other than the Big Zinc, as Gécamines was principally interested in copper. This density factor is therefore likely to be inappropriate for the estimation of zinc in high grade iron-poor sphalerite such as occurs in the Big Zinc. With the emphasis on copper, Gécamines adopted the following cut-off grade factors, based on 1970s metal prices:

- "Ore": >2% Cu or >14% Zn
- "Low grade": 1-2% Cu or 7-14% Zn
- "Waste": <1% Cu or <7% Zn

By using these cut-off grade criteria, material grading 2% Cu and 0% Zn would be included in the mineral resource, whereas material grading 1.9% Cu and 13.9% Zn would not. These grade categories were outlined on level plans. The cut-off grade factors were apparently not revised for years, despite changing metal prices. In the opinion of the authors of the IMC Technical Report, should zinc as well as copper be mined and concentrates produced by flotation, then this method of defining cut-off grades would need to be radically changed (Kelly, *et al.*, 2012).

The cut-off parameters were applied by Gécamines and resources/reserves classified as "Certain", "Probable" and "Possible". The "Certain" category was supported by the results of detailed sampling in crosscuts as well as from drillholes. The "Probable" category was based on a reasonable number of drillhole intersections and the assumption of continuity between them. "Possible" resources were based on the results of a few drillhole intersections and the projection of known geological controls on mineralization. No allowance was made in these estimates for dilution or mining recovery; instead a mine call factor was applied to estimate the actual recovery.

The unrealistic and inflexible approach to cut-off grade represents the main deficiency in the Gécamines estimation methodology.

IMC was unable to validate Gécamines "reserve" estimates through reconciliation with actual production, as this information was not available.

6.3.2 Techpro Estimate

Techpro established a computerised database for all Kipushi drillhole data, with the results being encoded by a local DRC team (Kelly et al., 2012). This database incorporated the information contained in the drill log sheets as follows: (i) drillhole number; (ii) collar position, direction (azimuth), inclination, length, core recovery, date of completion, remarks; (iii) assay results for arsenic, copper, lead, zinc, sulphur and iron; (iv) geological log, by means of simple codes; (v) mineralogical log, by means of codes; (vi) down-the-hole survey data; and (vii) hydrological data. The Techpro database, which included data from 762 holes drilled at the Kipushi deposit, showed that the average length of all holes was 122 m with an average core recovery of 84%. Of these, approximately 200 holes were drilled at or below the 1,150 metre-level and had an average drillhole length of 160 m and core recovery of 89%. Mineralization, believed to form part of the Big Zinc zone, was intersected by 84 of these holes. The average length of approximately 7,500 samples submitted for analysis was 3.44 m.

IMC concluded that the Techpro estimate is fair and reasonable for demonstrated Measured plus Indicated Mineral Resources and that the Inferred Mineral Resource estimate largely represents the projection of the Fault Zone mineralization from the 1,500 metre level to the 1,800 metre level (Table 6-1). IMC also noted that mineralization at depth may extend into neighbouring Zambia (Figure 6-3), however this is stated as having not been included in the Historical Estimate.

Table 6-1
Summary of Kipushi Historical Estimate (Techpro 1997)

		South			North			Big Zinc		
Category	**Level (m below surface)**	**Tonnes (millions)**	**Cu %**	**Zn %**	**Tonnes (millions)**	**Cu %**	**Zn %**	**Tonnes (millions)**	**Cu %**	**Zn %**
Measured	100 to 1150	-	-	-	3.7	2.01	2.05	-	-	-
Measured	1150 to 1295	2.5	2.47	18.58	1.9	4.19	4.35	0.8	1.16	33.52
Indicated	1295 to 1500	1.5	2.27	17.04	2.6	4.09	5.25	3.9	0.68	39.57
Total M&I	**1150 to 1500**	**4.0**	**2.40**	**18.00**	**4.5**	**4.13**	**4.87**	**4.7**	**0.76**	**38.54**

Source: Kelly *et al.*, (2012)

Notes:

1. The above Historical Estimate is based on Gécamines information including the Gécamines cut-off grade approach. It must be noted that the Techpro 1997 estimate is a Historical Estimate in terms of NI 43-101 and should not be regarded as a current Mineral Resource. A Qualified Person has not done sufficient work to classify the Historical Estimate as a current Mineral Resource. The Historical Estimate should be regarded as no longer relevant, it having been superseded by the January 23, 2015 Mineral Resource stated in this Technical Report.

2. Historical resource estimate includes the Kipushi Fault Zone, Nord Riche and Big Zinc mineralized zones.

The Gécamines cut-off grade criteria were used in the Techpro estimate. Where possible, Techpro checked the Gécamines figures and concluded that they were mostly acceptable and representative of the deposit. The Gécamines categories "Certain", "Probable" and "Possible" were considered by Techpro at the time to be closely equivalent to the respective JORC categories of Measured, Indicated and Inferred, and therefore applied these classifications.

The Historical Estimates stated in Table 6-1 include the Nord Riche, Kipushi Fault Zone and Big Zinc mineralized zones. The Historical Estimates that were termed Measured and Indicated Resources for the Big Zinc extend from the 1,207 metre-level to the 1,500 metre-level and total 4.71 Mt at an average grade of 38.55% Zn.

At the time of the Techpro estimate, the Big Zinc zone was reasonably well defined between the 1,200 and 1,550 metre-levels and had approximate dimensions of 100 m along strike, a width of 40-80 m, and a down-plunge extent of greater than 300 m.

Significant down-plunge exploration potential for the Big Zinc was recognised as a result of four holes drilled at steep inclinations within mineralization down to the 1,640 metre-level. However, due to insufficient data, Big Zinc mineralization below the 1,500 metre-level was excluded from the Techpro estimate, which only took into account a proportion of the Kipushi Fault Zone mineralization between the 1,500 metre and 1,800 metre-levels.

6.4 Historical Production

The Kipushi deposit has largely been mined from surface down to approximately the 1,150 metre-level. The 1996 WGM report (Ehrlich, 1996) records Gécamines production from 1926 to 1993 as approximately 60 Mt at 6.78% Cu for 4.1 Mt of copper and 11.03% Zn for 6.6 Mt of zinc. Between 1956 and 1978, 12,673 tonnes of lead and approximately 278 tonnes of germanium in concentrate were produced. Historically, a zinc and copper concentrate was produced from sulphide feed.

In addition to the recorded production of copper, zinc, lead and germanium, historical Gécamines mine-level plans for Kipushi also reported the presence of precious metals. There is no formal record of gold and silver production; the mine's concentrate was shipped to Belgium and any recovery of precious metals was not disclosed.

The most recent production data available is documented in Kelly, *et al.,* (2012) and is shown in Table 6-2. Mining operations along the Kipushi Fault Zone were focussed on what was termed the South Ore Body and North Orebody. The extent of stoping on 1,150 metre-level as at 1993 is shown in Figure 6-3, along with the copper and zinc grade distribution on this level.

Table 6-2

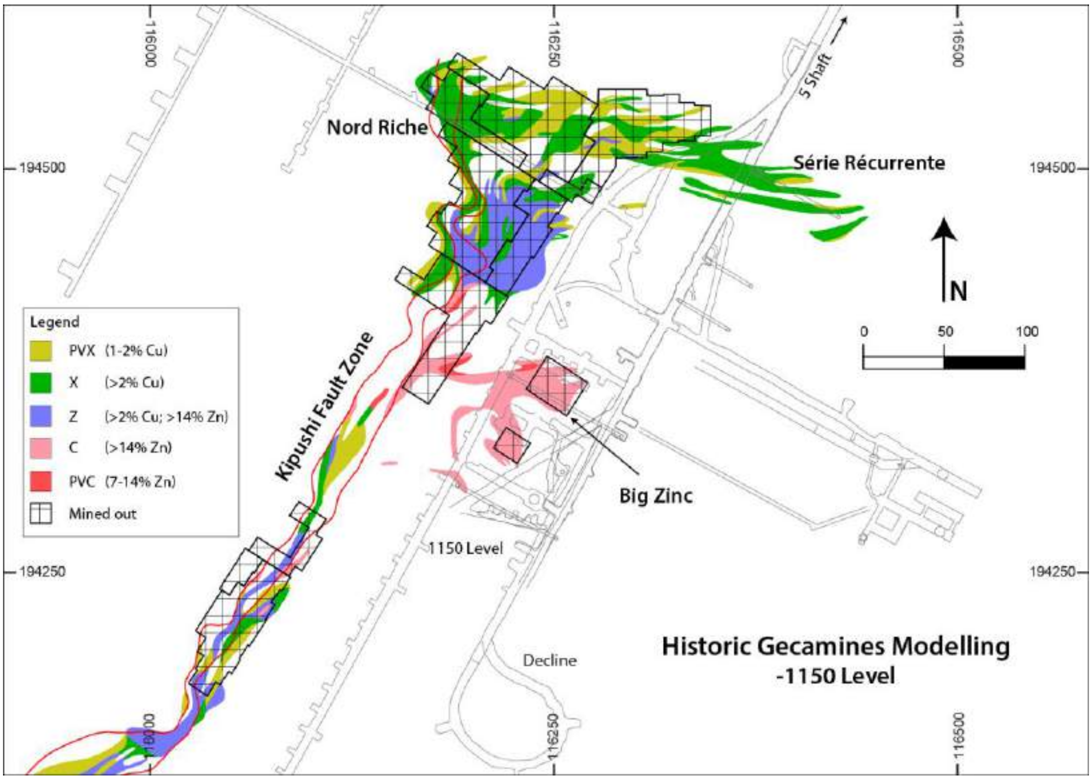
Kipushi Mine – Historical production from 1985 to closure in 1993

Year	Feed (000t)	%Cu	%Zn	Zinc Cathode (t)	%Zn in Zinc Concentrate	%Cu in Zinc Concentrate
1985	1 589	3.47	6.86	72 260	52.6	4.5
1986	1 508	3.21	8.40	71 490	No data	No data
1987	1 325	3.24	10.11	62 950	53.3	3.1
1988	1 387	3.08	10.29	69 120	50.0	3.7
1989	1 358	2.65	9.37	61 210	51.9	3.7
1990	1 334	2.26	8.53	44 400	51.8	3.4
1991	1 043	1.89	7.82	32 730	53.2	2.9
1992	619	1.75	7.32	No data	No data	No data
1993	147	1.85	9.05	No data	No data	No data

Source: Kelly, *et al.*, (2015)

Figure 6-3

Extent of Kipushi mineralization at the 1,150 metre-level as at 1993



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

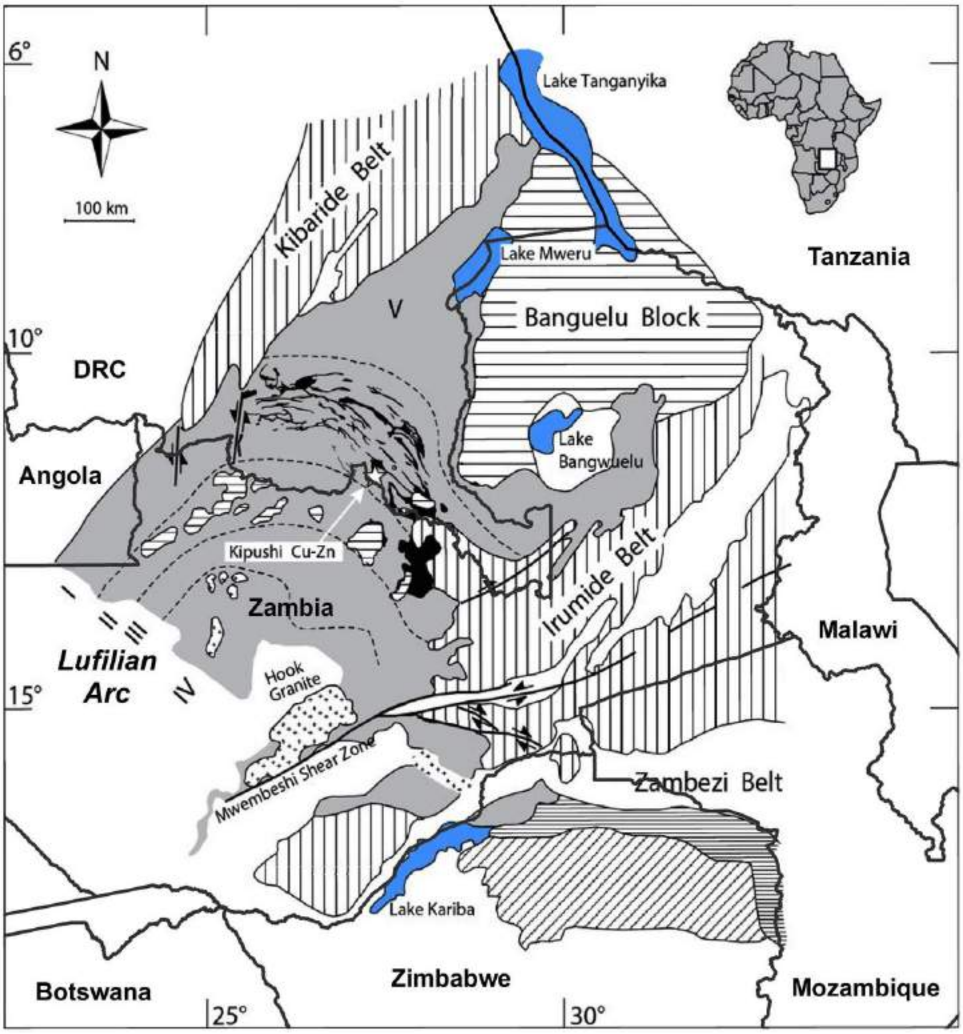
7 GEOLOGICAL SETTING AND MINERALIZATION

The following review of the geological setting of the Kipushi Project has been compiled from published literature as cited and as referenced in Section 27 of this Report, together with geological knowledge gained by KICO during the course of its underground drilling programme.

7.1 Regional Geology

Kipushi is located within the Central African Copperbelt a northerly convex arc extending approximately 500 km from north central Zambia through the southern part of the DRC into Angola (Figure 7-1). The Central African Copperbelt constitutes a metallogenic province that hosts numerous world-class copper-cobalt deposits both in the DRC and Zambia (Figure 7-2).

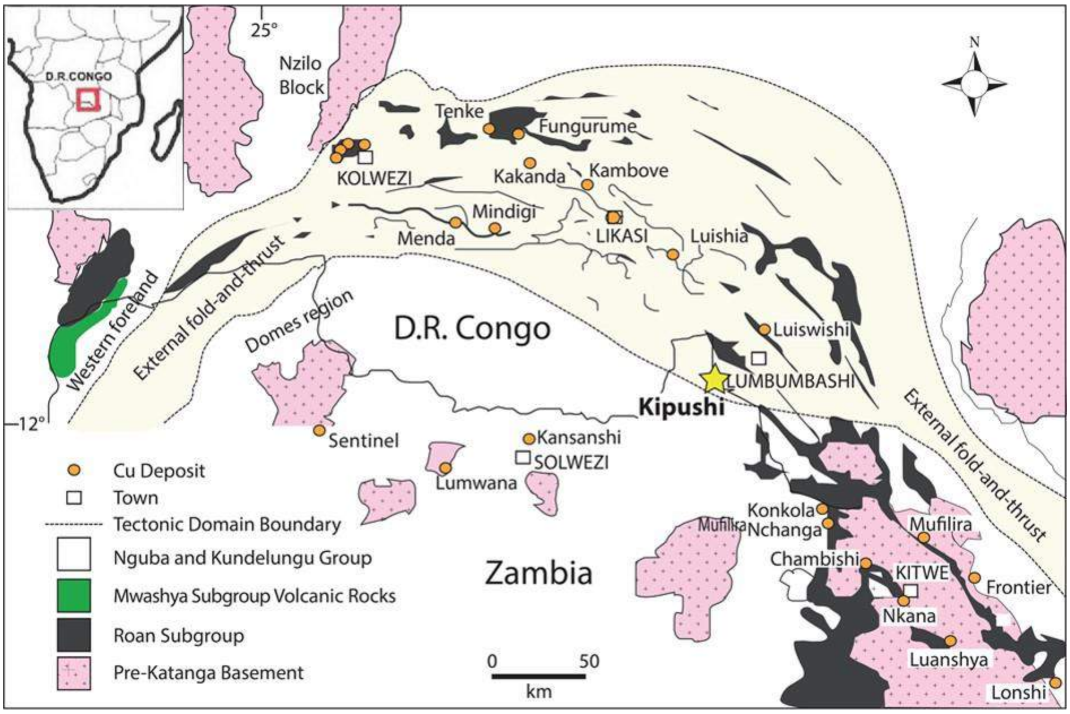
Figure 7-1
Regional geological setting of the Lufilian Arc and location of the Kipushi Project in the Central African Copperbelt



Source: Modified after Kampunzu *et al.,* (2009)

Figure 7-2

Structural domains and schematic geology of the Central African Copperbelt, and the location of the Kipushi Project



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015) adapted after François (1974)

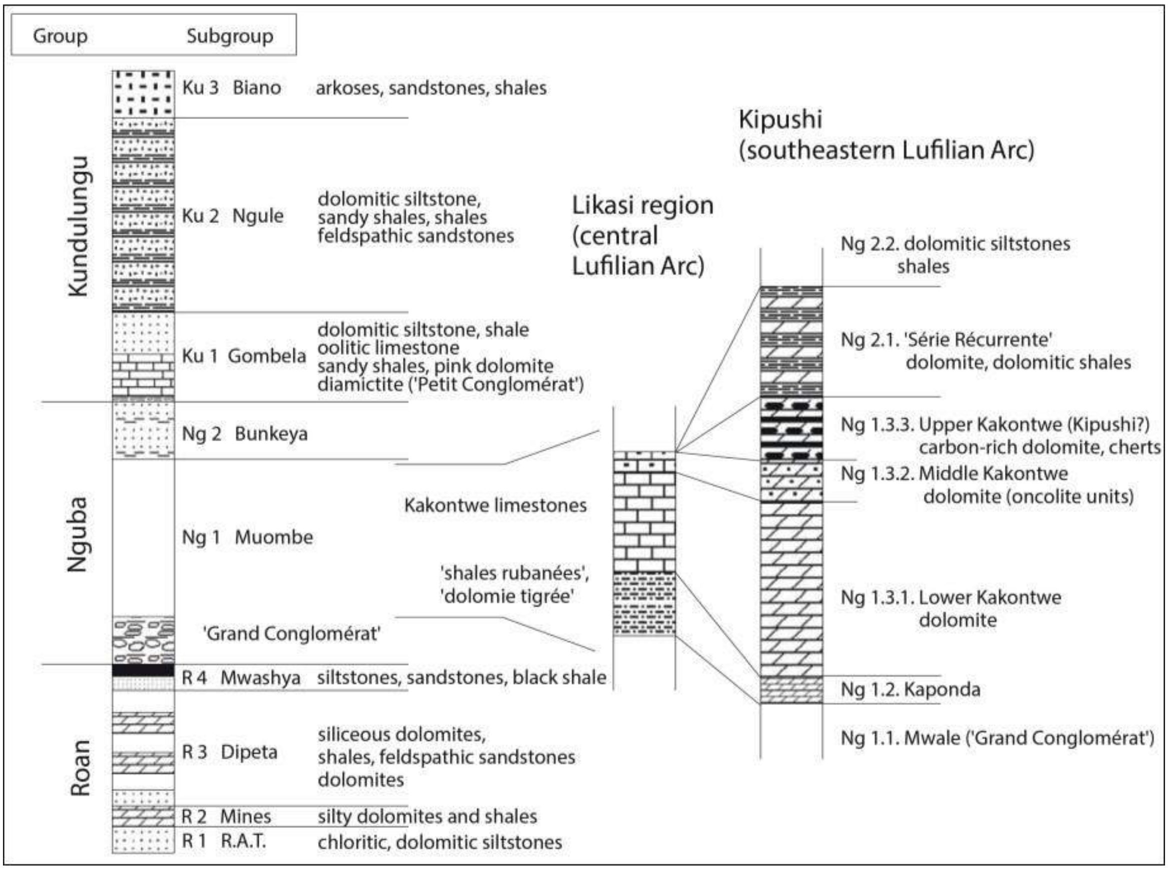
The Central African Copperbelt lies within the Lufilian Arc, a Pan-African age fold and thrust belt developed between the Congo Craton to the northwest and the Kalahari Craton to the southeast. The Lufilian Arc is one of several Neoproterozoic fold belts in Africa that originated through intracratonic rifting, sedimentation and subsequent closure accompanied by deformation and metamorphism. The Lufilian Orogeny involved north to north-eastward directed thrusting, leading to the formation of the northward convex Lufilian Arc. The crustal scale Mwembeshi Dislocation Zone separates the Lufilian Arc from the Zambezi Belt to the south.

The Lufilian Arc is composed of a 5-10 km thick sequence of metasedimentary rocks comprising the Katanga Supergroup. This is underlain by a basement comprising Neoarchaean granites and granulites of the Congo Craton in the western part of the Lufulian Arc, and Palaeoproterozoic schists, granites and gneisses of the Domes Region, the Lufubu Metamorphic Complex, and the quartzite-metapelite sequence of the Muva Supergroup in Zambia (Kampunzu *et al.*, 2009).

7.1.1 Stratigraphy

The Katanga Supergroup is subdivided into three major stratigraphic units: the basal Roan, the middle Nguba (formerly known as the Lower Kundulungu) and the uppermost Kundulungu Groups. These are separated on the basis of two regionally correlated (glaciogenic) diamictite units. The stratigraphy of the Katanga Supergroup as defined in the traditional DRC context, is shown in Figure 7-3.

Figure 7-3
Stratigraphy of the Katangan Supergroup, southern DRC



Source: Heijlen *et al.*, (2008)

The **Roan Group** was deposited unconformably on the basement. The youngest included zircons in the basal sequence in Zambia give a maximum 880 Ma age for sedimentation (Armstrong, 2005). The base of the Roan sequence in the Congolese Copperbelt is not exposed or drilled, and as identified consists of a lower siliciclastic unit (*Roches Argilo-Talqueuses* [R.A.T.] inferred to also have contained evaporites, a middle carbonate and siliciclastic unit (Mines Subgroup), an upper carbonate unit (Dipeta Subgroup), and an uppermost siliciclastic to calcareous unit (Mwashya Subgroup). Stratigraphic relations, particularly between these Subgroups, are commonly obscured by unusual breccias considered to be evaporitic in origin.

The **Nguba Group** comprises a lower siliciclastic and dolomitic limestone unit (Muombe Subgroup) and an upper predominantly siliciclastic and minor calcareous unit (Bunkeya Subgroup). The base of the Nguba Group is marked by a regionally extensive matrix-supported glaciogenic diamictite known as the *Grand Conglomérat*, referred to as the Mwale Formation. Zircons from sparse included peperites intruded into the basal un-lithified diamictite provide U-Pb ages of 735 Ma±5 Ma (Key *et al.*, 2001). The overlying dolomitic limestones (Kaponda or Lower Kakontwe, Middle Kakontwe and Kipushi or Upper Kakontwe Formations) are the hosts to Zn-Pb-(Cu) mineralization in the DRC. The overlying Bunkeya Subgroup comprises the Katete (*Série Récurrente*) and Monwezi Formations, which are made up of dolomitic sandstones, siltstones and shales.

The **Kundulungu Group** is subdivided into three subgroups in the DRC, comprising a lower siltstone-shale-carbonate unit (Gombela Subgroup), a middle dolomitic pelite-siltstone-sandstone unit (Ngule Subgroup) and an upper arenaceous unit (Biano Subgroup) interpreted as a molasse sequence. The base of the Gombela Subgroup is marked by a second regionally extensive matrix-supported glaciogenic diamictite (*Petit Conglomérat*) which is overlain by a dolomitic limestone cap. The diamictite is correlated to the global Marinoan glaciation dated by Hoffman *et al.,* (2004) to 635 Ma from a recognised equivalent in Namibia.

7.1.2 Tectonic Evolution

Sedimentation of the Katangan Supergroup began in a system of linked intracratonic rifts developed by the divergence and eventual break-up of the Rodinia Supercontinent (Selley *et al.*, 2005). The transition from this initial syn-rift phase of continental deposition to a proto-oceanic rift basin is marked by the significant transgression of marine siliciclastics of the Mwashya Subgroup and overlying units of the Nguba and Kundulungu Groups over a wide area of the basin (Barron *et al.,* 2003). The transition is also marked by the intrusion of tholeiitic mafic dykes in the Dipeta/Mwashya Subgroups, especially in northern Zambian (Barron *et al.,* 2003) and extrusion of mafic and felsic tuffs (Kampunzu *et al.*, 2000, Cailteux 1994).

A change from extensional tectonics to convergence occurs between 700 and 600 Ma (Cosi *et al.*, 1992), however more recent dating constrains the Lufilian orogeny to between 600 Ma and 500 Ma, with the earliest dates (592 Ma) from greenschist-facies rocks in the Zambian Copperbelt (Rainaud *et al.*, 2005). Deformation shows different expressions within concentric, northerly convex zones that parallel the Lufilian arc, with metamorphic grades increasing from the undeformed northern margins in the foreland, to the south.

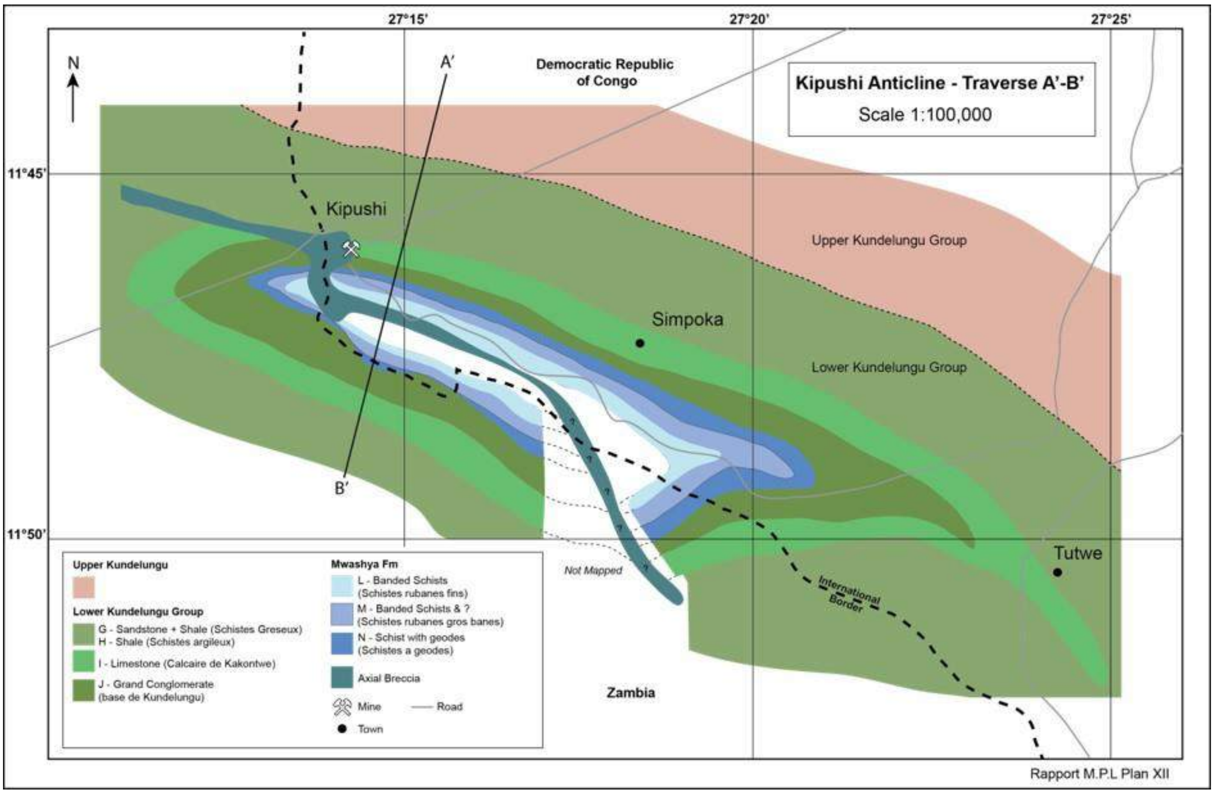
Unrug (1988) defined five structural domains within the Lufilian Arc: the external fold-and-thrust belt (I), the “Domes area” (II), the “Synclinorial belt” (III), the “Katangan High” (IV), and the “Katangan Aulacogen” (V). Kipushi occurs within the external fold and thrust belt as does the remainder of the Congolese Copperbelt, whereas the Zambian deposits occur adjacent to the easternmost basement inlier of the Domes region.

7.2 Local Geology

7.2.1 Structure

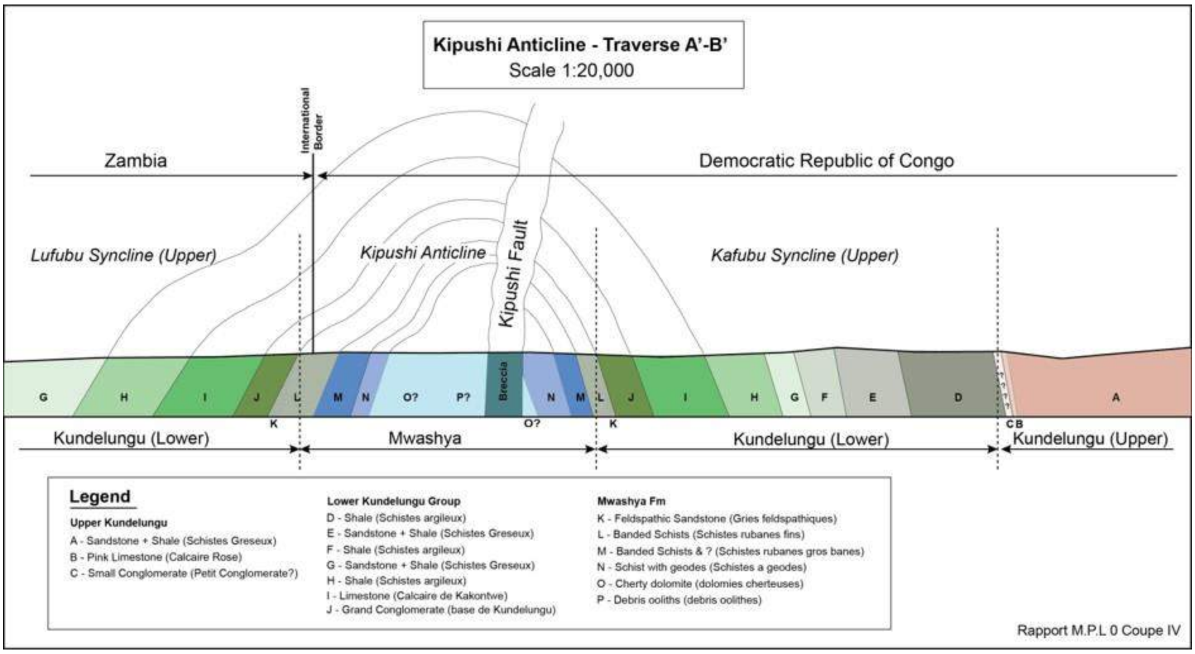
The Kipushi Project is located on the northern limb of the regional west-northwest trending Kipushi Anticline which straddles the border between Zambia and the DRC. The northern limb of the anticline dips at 75-85° to the north-northeast and the southern limb at 60-70° to the south-southwest as shown in the cross section in Figure 7-4 and Figure 7-5. The anticline has a faulted axial core comprising a megabreccia referred to as the “Axial Breccia” by Kampunzu *et al.,* (2009). The megabreccia occurs as a heterogeneous layer-parallel breccia with highly strained and brecciated fragments of Roan and Nguba Group rocks in a chloritic silty matrix (Briart, 1947). This breccia type is similar to that which typically underlies the thrusts related to the Lufilian Orogeny.

Figure 7-4
Geological map of the Kipushi Anticline



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015) adapted after Briart (1947)

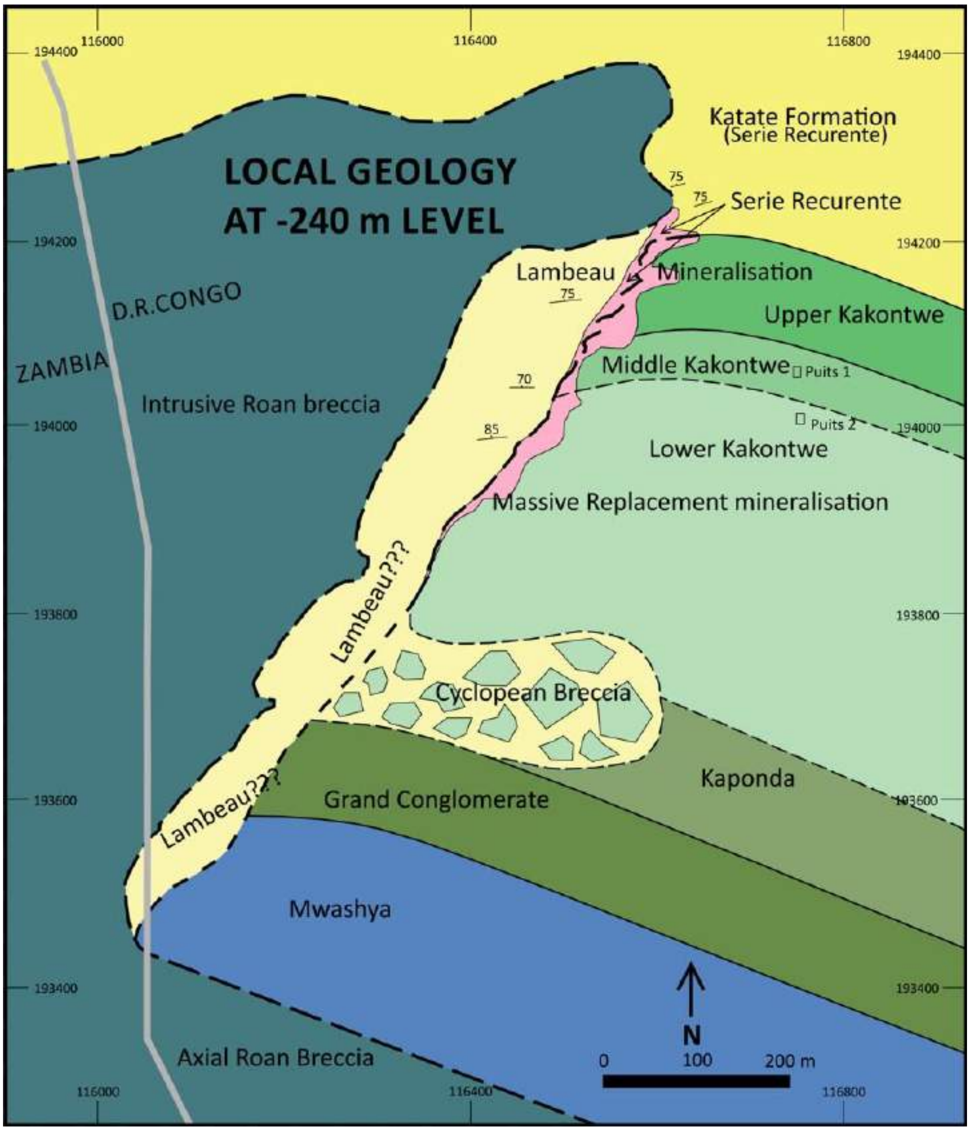
Figure 7-5
Section through the Kipushi Anticline



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015) adapted after Briart (1947)

A ~north-northeast striking, ~70° west dipping discontinuity, several tens of metres in width and known as the 'Kipushi Fault' or 'Kipushi Fault Zone', juxtaposes Kakontwe strata to the east against a lens or block of generally barren siltstones and sandstones to the west. This lens is known locally as the *"Grand Lambeau"* (*lambeau* = fragment) and terminates the Kakontwe of the northern limb of the anticline against the fault zone on its footwall side Figure 7-6. The siltstones and sandstones of the *Grand Lambeau* are truncated on their western side by the intrusive axial breccia. The Kipushi Fault Zone has an irregular, highly sinuous geometry such that the location and orientation of its hangingwall and footwall contacts vary, commonly independently, along strike and down dip.

Figure 7-6
Schematic geological map of the Kipushi deposit at a depth of 240 m below surface. The Kakontwe Formation is truncated against a syn-sedimentary fault.

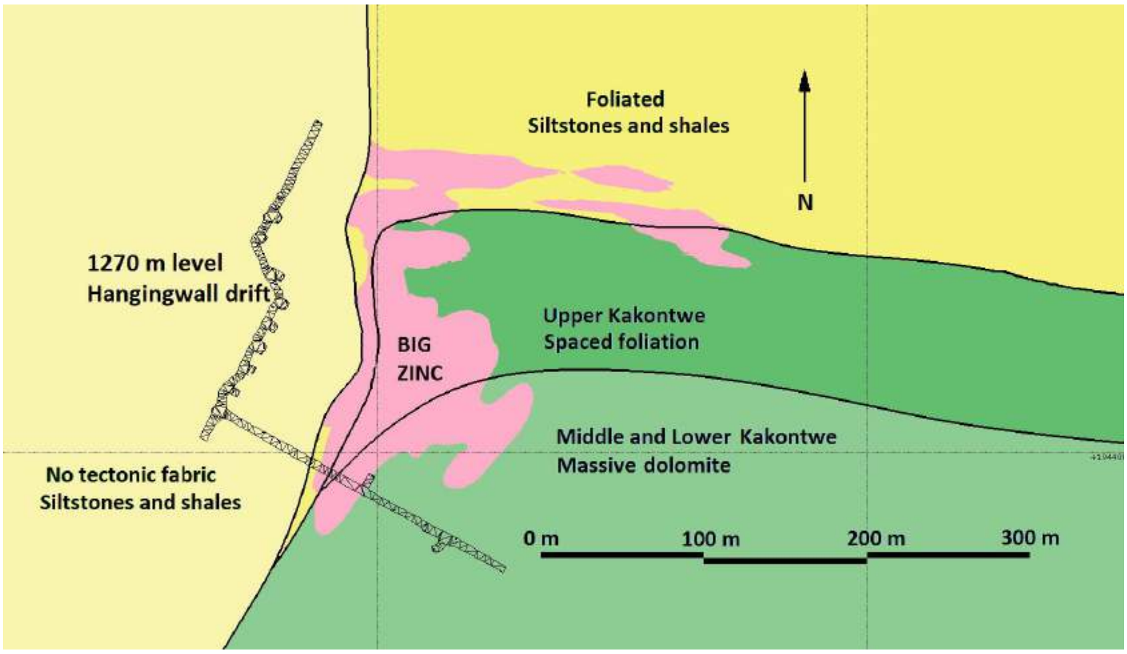


Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015) adapted after Briart (1947)

The Katangan sequence has been rotated during the formation of the Kipushi anticline, therefore, the plan view shown in Figure 7-7 is analogous to a pre-folding ~northwest/southeast section view. Remarkably this configuration changes little in section, down to at least 1200 m depth.

The Kipushi deposit is focused at the intersection of the Kakontwe and Katete Formations with the Kipushi Fault. Both formations maintain a uniform west-northwest/east-southeast strike along the northern flank of the Kipushi anticline, however, within 100 m of the fault zone the strike of the Upper Kakontwe and Katete formations begins to rotate towards parallelism with the fault zone. The juxtaposition of massive dolomites on the footwall side of a north-northwesterly trending syn-sedimentary fault, against siltstones on the hanging wall side, in-turn succeeded by siltstones and siltstone stratigraphically succeeding the dolomites gives a permanent rheological discontinuity that was multiply reactivated as the Kipushi Fault.

Figure 7-7
Kipushi mineralization is spatially associated with the rheological contact between a dolomite-dominated package to the southeast and siltstones and shales to the west and north



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

The northern limb of the Kipushi anticline dips ~80 degrees north, considerably steeper than the southern limb. The steeply southern dip of the anticline axial plane is paralleled by a slatey cleavage, well developed in the siltstones of the Katete formation, and expressed as an anastomosing spaced cleavage in the Upper Kakontwe Formation (Figure 7-8), both believed to have developed during north-northeast directed compression. Cleavage is close to parallel with bedding, over 100 m west of the fault zone. Towards the fault zone however, cleavage cuts bedding at an increasing angle.

Figure 7-8

Incipient development of an anastomosing spaced cleavage in the Upper Kakotwe Formation looking west on a footwall drive on -865 m level. Foliation can be seen to step down-stratigraphy (hence fabric steps down to the left in this photo.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-9

Interbedded dolomite-shale/siltstone unit in the Upper Kakontwe Formation at 153 m in KPU070 (hole orientation -35 to 125). Bedding dips steeply to NNW (here in proximity to Kipushi Fault) and is cut by a steep east-west cleavage. Core is positioned such that the image represents a plan view with north to the top.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

7.2.2 Recent Work

Beyond the abundant literature focussing on mineralogy and geochemistry at Kipushi (e.g. Heijlen *et al.*, 2008; Kampunzu *et al.*, 2009, and references therein) there is a paucity of modern work and literature relating to stratigraphy, structure and interpretation of the host rocks. Intiomale (1982) and Intiomale and Oosterbosch (1974) have served as the primary references for the stratigraphic and geological description of the deposit. These in turn heavily reference a report by *Union Minière du Haut Katanga* published in 1947 (Briart, 1947) and held in Teuveren, Belgium. Much of this work predates or ignores ideas of allocthonous salt that were introduced in the Copperbelt in the late 1980s (De Magnée and François, 1988), and more recent work (Selley *et al.*, 2005) relating to the importance of growth-faults in basin evolution.

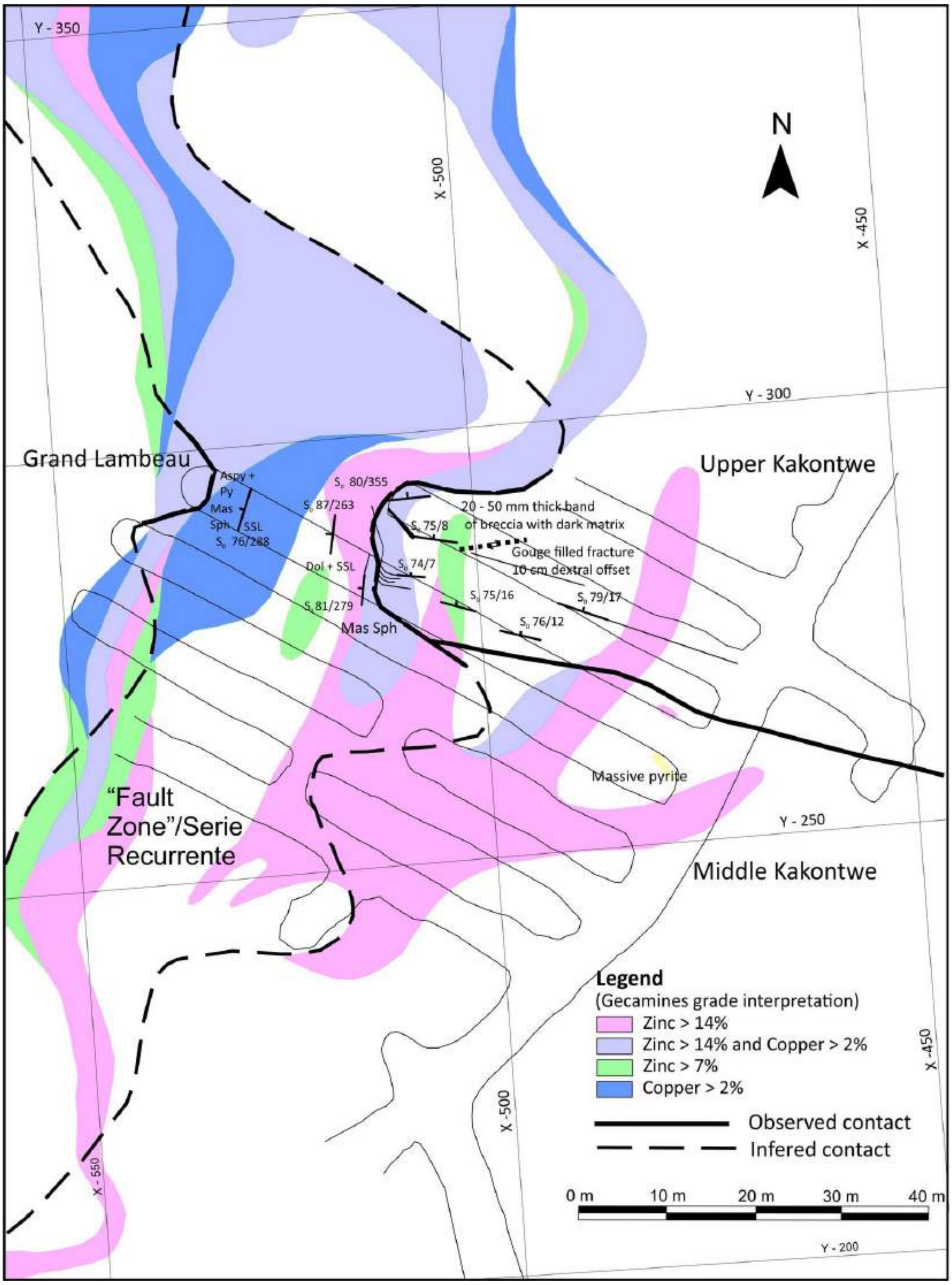
The only surviving production-era geological maps at Kipushi mine are level plans, on which structural data are few, mainly recording strike and dip and the upper contact of the Kakontwe Formation. Systematic underground mapping, if conducted, is no longer preserved, and surviving level plans and drill sections were historically interpreted primarily on the basis of interpolation between drillholes. Therefore, the geological model has been developed from the current drill programme and re-interpretation of existing historical data, including drill cores.

Work by KICO currently envisages the Kipushi Fault as a complex, multistage zone predicated on a syn-sedimentary growth fault that was reactivated during subsequent tectonic events, such as the development of the Kipushi anticline. The fault zone has long been recognized as a locus for mineralization and this interpretation remains valid.

Observations from drilling and mapping on the 1,220 and 1,275 metre-levels suggest a partly conformable stratigraphic succession exists across the northern side of the fault, between the Kakontwe and Katete Formations and the *Grand Lambeau* (Figure 7-10). This is especially clear in drillhole KPU074 (Figure 7-11), with siltstone and sandstone of the *Grand Lambeau* in partly conformable contact with siltstone and dolomite of the *Série Récurrente* at the level of the Upper Kakontwe and *Série Récurrente*. The local rotation of beds into parallelism with the fault zone has led to KICO re-interpreting this feature as a growth fault. Historical maps and sections also interpret a change in bedding orientation in close proximity to the fault. Although sections through the northern portion of the Kipushi Fault at the level of the Upper Kakontwe show an intact if condensed stratigraphy, more southerly sections at a lower stratigraphic level feature a modified stratigraphy with units that have been modified by carbonate dissolution during subsequent reactivation of the fault zone.

At the level of the upper Kakontwe Formation, the area of fault zone parallel to bedding coincides with a siltstone matrix supported sedimentary breccia with variously altered dolomite or shale clasts interpreted to be *Série Récurrente* that has slumped down the developing syn-sedimentary fault (Figure 7-12).

Figure 7-10
Mapping undertaken by KICO on 1,220 metre-level, with grade interpretations taken from historical level plans.



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-11

Transition from greenish-grey siltstones of the *Grand Lambeau* (to 56.9 m) to the purplish-grey *Série Récurrente* in drillhole KPU074. This shows the subtle expression of the northern limit of the Kipushi Fault Zone.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-12

Sedimentary breccia in the Kipushi Fault Zone from (top to bottom) KPU058 (77.4 m), KPU062 (82 m), KPU065 (87.8 m) and KPU066 (97.3 m). Pieces are 22 cm long and colour has been enhanced.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

7.2.3 Stratigraphy

The stratigraphic sequence at Kipushi forms part of the Nguba Group, whose maximum depositional age is constrained by zircons from mafic rocks intruded into the basal unlithified diamictite providing U-Pb ages of 735 Ma±5 Ma (Key *et al.*, 2001). This is succeeded by a carbonate-dominant sequence of the Kaponda and Kakontwe Formations that attain a thickness of >600 m at Kipushi, considerably greater than elsewhere in the Congolese Copperbelt. The overlying Katete Formation (*Série Récurrente*) consists of alternating greenish siltstone and pale purple dolostone.

A description of the Kipushi stratigraphy and traditional alpha-numeric nomenclature is given in Table 7-1. This coding method was maintained by KICO during the logging campaign.

Table 7-1
Revised stratigraphic column for the Kipushi Project

Subgroup		Formation		Lithology (Hanging wall side)	Lithology (Footwall side)	Traditional Congolese designation	Mineralization
Upper Nguba (Bunkeya)	Monwezi	Katete Formation *(Série Récurrente)*			Laminated, purple to whitish, albite-bearing calcareous and talcose dolostone with Interbedded grey-green to dark grey shale bands.	Ki2.1	Layer paralell, concordant disseminated and blebby cpy with minor bnt, typically <2%Cu with minor Mo and Re
Lower Nguba (Muombe)	Kipushi	Termed Upper Kakontwe by KICO and GCM	Kipushi Formation		Finely bedded black carbonaceous dolomite unit, up to 100-m thick (e.g., at Kipushi), characterized by black chert lenses and whitish oncolites, slump structures and lenticular grey-brown dolomitic shale. ~50 m thickness	Ki1.2.2.3 (Ki1.2.2.4)	Discordant massive and replacement cpy and minor sph
	Kakontwe		Upper Kakontwe		Kakontwe unit is a dark grey, stratified, calcareous and carbonaceous dolostone with intercalations of fine carbonaceous layers and black cherts. ~50 m thickness (thickens with depth)	Ki1.2.2.3	Discordant massive and replacement cpy and minor sph
		Middle Kakontwe		Fine grained sandstones, siltstones and minor calc-arenites of the '*Grand Lambeau*' Timing Uncertain	Massive and occasionally finely bedded carbonate mudstone. Oncolites at upper contact. ~80 m thick	Ki1.2.2.2	Discordant massive and replacement sph with minor cpy
		Lower Kakontwe			Light grey massive lamelliform and clotted calcimicrobial carbonates with a variety of textures. ~250 m thick.	Ki1.2.2.1	Discordant massive and replacement sph with minor cpy
	Kaponda	Kaponda Formation			Finely laminated blue-grey to dark grey, sometimes cherty and carbonaceous dolostone, calcareous in places. Dark, tortuous, lenticular cherty and dolomicritic layers alternating with lighter dolomicritic layers forming 'Dolomite de Tigre' (Tiger Dolomite) pattern.	Ki1.2.1	

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

The **Kipushi Fault** is a 10 – 50 m wide complex structure recording multiple styles of deformation and brecciation. In most places it comprises two distinct hanging wall and footwall structures (contacts) with an intervening central zone of siltstones, shales and minor dolomites, all of which separates the footwall Kakontwe Formation from the hanging wall *Grand Lambeau*. The architecture of a growth fault on it's northern side, clearly seen in plan view, has been significantly modified by subsequent deformation and alteration. Northern sections through the fault show a clear intact succession from Upper Kakontwe, to *Série Récurrente* to *Grand Lambeau*. However the section is considerably more complex and narrower in the south, such that it has necessitated the development of a local stratigraphy (Table 7-2).

Table 7-2

Kipushi Fault Zone stratigraphy, in order from hanging wall to footwall

Stratigraphic unit	Lithology	Codes or traditional stratigraphic designation
Grand Lambeau (Hanging wall)	WNW striking, steeply NNE-dipping, north-younging sequence of interbedded siltstone, sandstone and minor conglomerate with abundant sandstone dykes and dewatering structures. Upper (northern) portion postulated to be stratigraphically equivalent to the Série Récurrente. Locally mineralized close to the Kipushi Fault.	GLB
Série Récurrente	Interbedded purple dolomite and green siltstone gradational to deformed breccia with dolomite clasts/fragments/boudins (often veined or silicified) bound in a green/grey siltstone matrix. Rarely seen in south. Locally mineralized with pyrite and chalcopyrite.	Ki2.1
Fault Zone Siltstone-shale	Westward-younging and coarsening sequence of interbedded carbonaceous shale and grey siltstone, grades up-section (westward) from thin-bedded shale-siltstone to massive thick-bedded siltstone. Commonly includes a grey dolomite bed near the top (adjacent to contact with Grand Lambeau). Rarely seen in the north. Abundant fine grained, locally massive pyrite, mineralized near Big Zinc contact with red sphalerite and pyrite.	FZSSL
Carbonaceous Matrix Breccia	Clast or matrix supported dissolution breccia with dark grey/black carbonaceous matrix. Clasts of dolomite or siltstone (dolomite clasts are frequently embayed) depending on protolith. Rarely seen in the north. Often mineralized on Big Zinc contact with pyrite and red sphalerite.	CBX
Kakontwe formation (Footwall)	Intact middle or upper Kakontwe. Often carbon-bearing immediately next to fault-zone (where not replaced by sulphides).	Ki1.2.2.2/ Ki1.2.2.3

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

The carbonaceous breccia and fault zone siltstone-shale are believed to represent Upper Kakontwe strata entrained within the fault zone that has undergone subsequent dissolution of the carbonate during reactivation, leaving only clay and organic carbon (Figure 7-13). Proceeding southwards along the fault zone, the volume of entrained higher stratigraphy diminishes as does the thickness of the fault zone.

Figure 7-13
A carbonaceous/argillaceous-matrix breccia in the Upper Kakontwe <100 m east of the Kipushi Fault Zone. The clasts are dolomite and chert fragments with some brassy pyrite. The extent of structural fabric development varies considerably indicating deformation postdates breccia formation. 610 m in KPU002

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

The contact between the *Grand Lambeau* and the Kipushi Fault Zone is marked by the following changes:

- The disappearance of economic mineralization - the *Grand Lambeau* locally hosts minor mineralization within several metres of the contact.
- A change from siltstones and carbonate in the fault zone to siltstones/sandstones
- Siltstones in the fault zone lack syn-sedimentary deformation textures, compared to abundant dewatering structures and sandstone dykes in the *Grand Lambeau*.
- A change in bedding orientation from ~north-northeast within the fault to west-northwest within the *Grand Lambeau*.

7.3 Alteration and Metamorphism

The rocks at Kipushi appear to have experienced lower greenschist facies metamorphism.

7.4 Mineralization

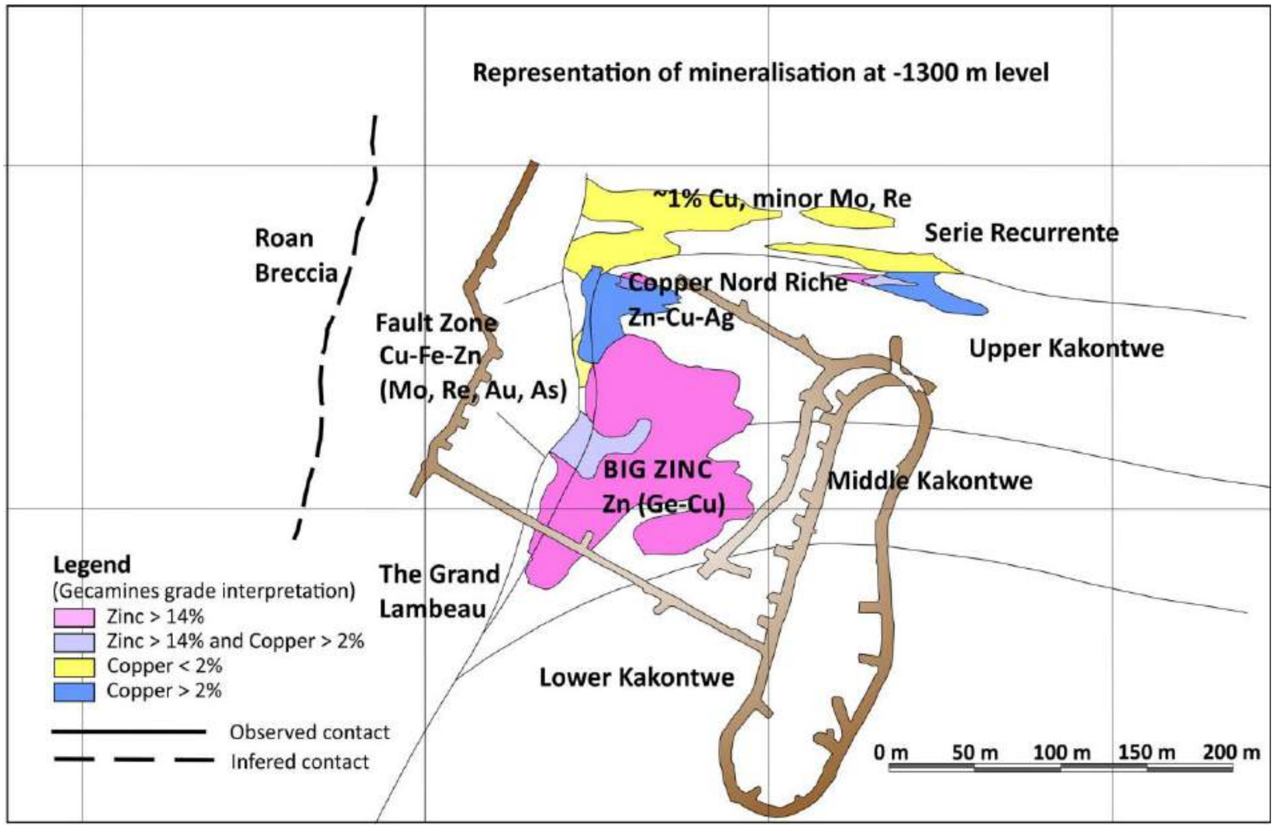
7.4.1 Overview

The Katanga Supergroup hosts a number of epigenetic zinc-copper-lead deposits developed within deformed platform carbonate sequences. While many of these are relatively small (e.g. Kengere and Lombe in the DRC; Bob Zinc, Lukusashi, Millberg, Mufukushi, Sebembere and Star Zinc in Zambia), Kipushi and Kabwe in the DRC and Zambia respectively represent world class deposits with predominantly massive sulphide mineralization contained within dolomitic limestone (Kampunzu, *et al.*, 2009). These deposits are polymetallic with a typical Zn-Pb-Cu-Ag-Cd-V association and also contain variable concentrations of As, Co, Mo, Rh, Ge and Ga.

Mineralization at Kipushi is spatially associated with the intersection of Nguba Group stratigraphy with the Kipushi Fault and occurs in several distinct settings (Figure 7-14):

- The Kipushi Fault Zone (copper, zinc and mixed copper-zinc mineralization both as massive sulphides and as veins),
- the *Série Récurrente* zone (disseminated to veinlet-style copper sulphide mineralization),
- the Upper Kakontwe zone (massive copper and zinc sulphides),
- the Copper *Nord Riche* zone (mainly copper but also mixed copper-zinc sulphide mineralization, both massive and vein-style), and
- the Big Zinc zone (massive zinc sulphide with local copper sulphide mineralization).

Figure 7-14
A representation of grade distribution at approximately 1300 m level. The grade classifications (and the colours) are consistent with those used on historical level plans and cross sections.

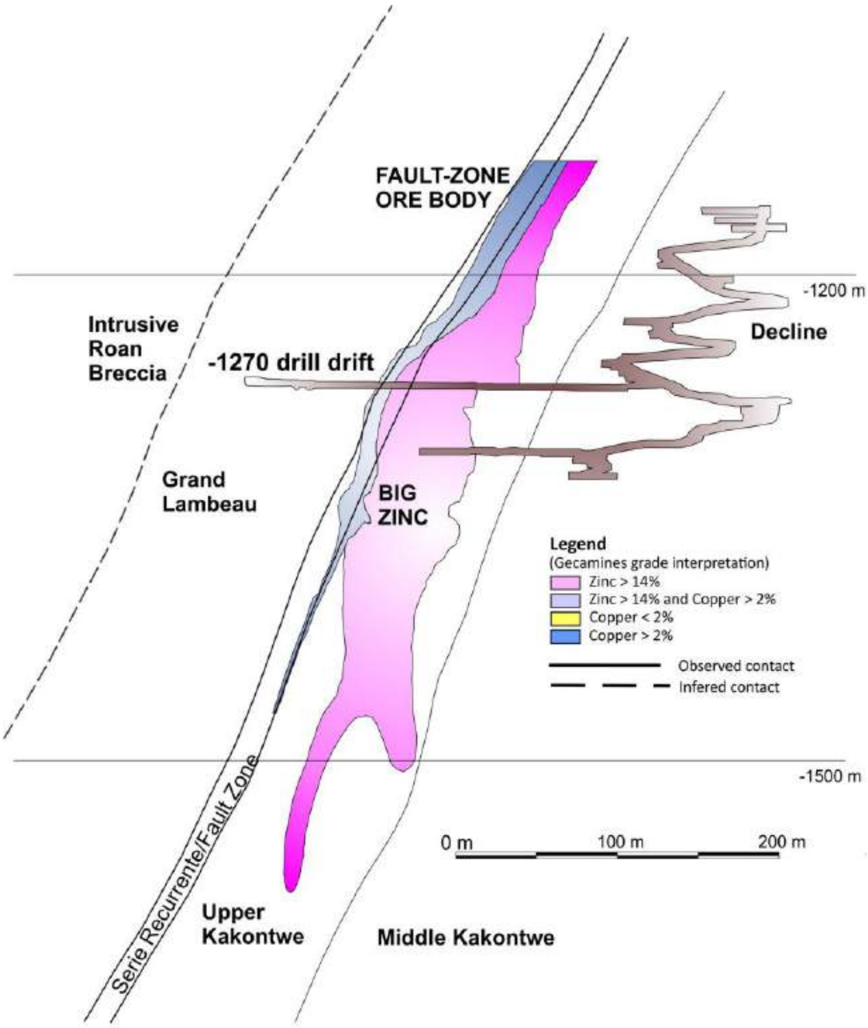


Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Mineralization at the Kipushi Project is generally copper-dominant or zinc-dominant with minor areas of mixed copper-zinc mineralization. Pyrite is present in some peripheral zones and forms massive lenses, particularly in the Kipushi Fault Zone. Copper-dominant mineralization in the form of chalcopyrite, bornite and tennantite is characteristically associated with dolomitic shales both within the Kipushi Fault Zone and extending eastwards along, and parallel to, bedding planes within the Katete Formation (*Série Récurrente*). Zinc-dominant mineralization in the Kakontwe Formation occurs as massive, irregular, discordant pipe-like bodies completely replacing the dolomite host and exhibiting a structural control. These bodies exhibit a steep southerly plunge from the fault zone and *Série Récurrente* contacts where they begin, to their terminations at depth within the Kakontwe Formation (Figure 7-15).

Figure 7-15

Cross section perpendicular to the Kipushi Fault, looking north-northeast



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

There is considerable variety in the mineralized zones and different styles sometimes occur with a diverse range of economically significant accessory minerals for which Kipushi is well known. Although the complex mineralogy of Kipushi has been documented for over 60 years, the lower levels of the deposit considered in this study show simpler mineralogy.

Sulphide mineralization in the Kakontwe Formation occurs as massive, irregular, discordant pipe-like bodies completely replacing the dolomite host and exhibiting a structural control. The overlying *Série Récurrente* and fault zone host foliation-parallel sulphides as discontinuous lenticles or veinlets in foliated siltstone, and veins or local replacement in the interbedded massive dolomite. Mineralized zones in all Kakontwe units exhibit a steep southerly plunge from the *Série Récurrente* contact, or the fault zone, to their terminations in the footwall. They also show a clear zonation from copper-rich at the *Série Récurrente* or fault zone contact, to zinc-rich to zinc- and pyrite-rich at their footwall terminations. The steep southerly plunge of the pods is difficult to reconcile with the intersection of the Upper Kakontwe and the fault zone giving a general northwest plunge to the Kipushi deposit.

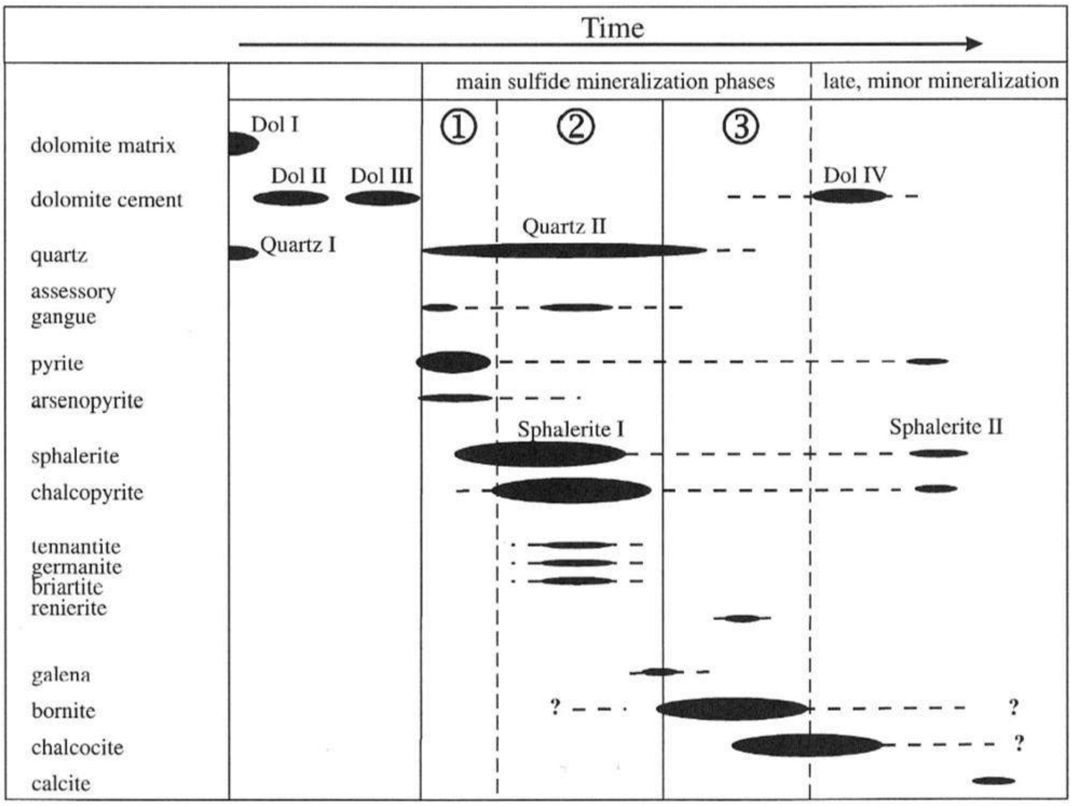
This mineral zonation is similar to that seen in other Central African Copperbelt deposits, wherein copper is proximal to source (for example, the Kipushi Fault Zone) whereas zinc and pyrite are distal.

Previous studies on the Kipushi mineralization have shown that the sulphide mineralization is complex and multiphase (e.g. Heijlen *et al.*, 2008). Different generations of hydrothermal dolomite are also observed. A generalised paragenesis based on previous studies including work by Heijlen *et al.,* (2008) is shown in Figure 7-16. As a typical feature, mineralization formed through massive replacement of the dolomite host rock and cements, commonly resulting in banded ore. Open space filling also occurred, but to a relatively minor extent. An initial sulphide phase of pyrite-arsenopyrite mineralization was followed by sphalerite, chalcopyrite, tennantite, germanite, briartite and galena in a second major phase of sulphide deposition. As a third major phase, bornite and chalcocite appear to selectively replace chalcopyrite, as secondary mineralization in the higher levels of the mine.

The host dolomite has undergone extensive recrystallization proximal to the mineralized zones and an increase in the silica content, with secondary grains and aggregates of fine quartz crystals (Chabu, 2003).

Historical mining at Kipushi was carried out from surface to approximately the 1,220 m level and occurred in three contiguous zones: the North and South zones of the Kipushi Fault Zone, and the approximately east-west striking steeply north dipping *Série Récurrente* zone in the footwall of the fault.

Figure 7-16
Generalised paragenesis of ore and gangue mineralization at Kipushi (Source:



Source: Heijlen *et al.*, (2008)

7.4.2 Kipushi Fault Zone

The Kipushi Fault Zone comprises Cu-Zn-Pb-Ag-Ge mineralization developed along the steeply northwest dipping Kipushi Fault between the *Grand Lambeau* to the west and intact Nguba Group stratigraphy to the east. Mineralisation locally extends laterally as discordant offshoots into rocks of the Kipushi (Upper Kakontwe) and Katete Formations in the footwall to the Kipushi Fault and terminates to the southwest where the Kipushi Fault intersects the *Grand Conglomérat* (Mwale Formation).

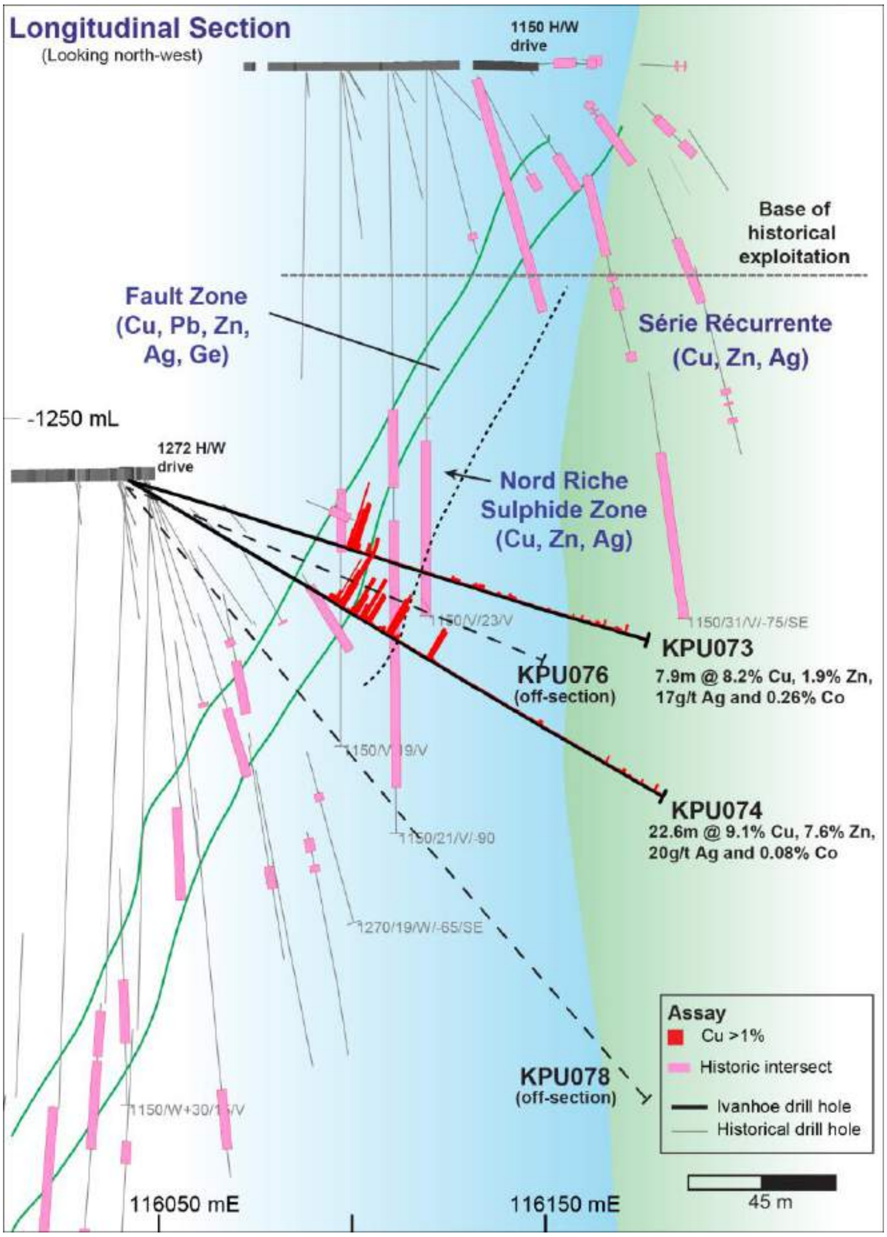
The Fault Zone deposit forms an irregular tabular body over a strike length of approximately 600 m and variable thickness that narrows with depth (Figure 7-17). The thickness varies from approximately 1 m to more than 20 m, with typical thicknesses ranging from 5 m to 10 m. Copper grades in the historically mined North zone decrease with depth from a maximum of 15% Cu to an average of 2% Cu at cessation of operations in *1993* (Kelly *et al.*, 2012). In contrast, zinc grades increase with depth. Below the 1 100 m level, the Fault Zone deposit diverges into a central zinc-copper-lead-rich branch and an external zinc-rich branch (the Big Zinc) as shown in Figure 7-15.

The Fault Zone features a diverse range of textures, lithologies, and mineralization styles and types. The grade is variable and decreases southwards down-stratigraphy. Copper is prevalent in the Katete (*Série Récurrente*) Formation of the Fault Zone, which in southern sections exists near the hangingwall side of the fault zone. It resembles copper mineralization in the intact Katete formation, except that it is more pyritic and its associated albite-dolomite alteration is more intense. Between approximately 1200 m and 1350 m depth, Big Zinc mineralization contacts the fault zone, where it is partially replaced with sphalerite and pyrite (Figure 7-18). It is postulated that sphalerite replaced the carbonate fraction of the fault-zone sedimentary/tectonic breccias. Immediately south of the Big Zinc, semi-massive chalcopyrite mineralization exists in the Middle and Upper Kakontwe dolomites in the immediate footwall to the Fault Zone, where higher stratigraphy has slumped toward parallelism with the contact.

Alteration associated with mineralization includes dolomitisation of the Kakontwe Formation limestone up to 200 m away from the deposit, silicification of wallrock dolomite, formation of black amorphous organic matter in the footwall dolomite up to 40 m away, chloritisation along mineralization contacts and along fractures, and kaolinisation of feldspars within the *Grand Lambeau*.

Figure 7-17

Longitudinal section at the northern end of the Kipushi Fault looking northwest and showing Fault Zone, *Nord Riche* and *Série Récurrente* mineralization together with historical and some recent drilling



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-18
An intercept of the Kipushi Fault Zone in KPU053. The contact with the hanging wall side of the Big Zinc is at 105.8 m.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

7.4.3 Copper Nord Riche

Discreet mineralized zones of patchy to massive chalcopyrite mineralization with minor sphalerite are focussed at the top of the Upper Kakontwe Formation near its contact with the Katete Formation (*Série Récurrente*) in a zone known locally as the Copper *Nord Riche* (Figure 7-17). Mineralization in the *Nord Riche* is significantly thicker than in the adjacent *Série Récurrente*. In the *Nord Riche*, mineralized zones are oblate and discordant, cutting down stratigraphy and thickening in closer proximity to the Kipushi Fault Zone, especially at the termination of the Upper Kakontwe against the Fault Zone (Figure 7-19). Chalcopyrite intercepts frequently contain abundant silver (>100 ppm), arsenic (>5000 ppm) and molybdenum (>100 ppm), associated with tennantite.

Replacement mineralization in the Upper Kakontwe has an association with locally disrupted bedding. Parasitic folds in the plane of bedding plunging at steep angles would seem to localise mineralization and replacement.

The *Nord Riche* area has been incompletely explored below the previous workings.

Figure 7-19

Drillhole KPU032 showing massive and patchy chalcopyrite/sphalerite mineralization in the Upper Kakontwe near the northern limit of the Fault Zone.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

7.4.4 Série Récurrente

Disseminated chalcopyrite-bornite mineralization within alternating siltstones and dolomite beds of the *Série Récurrente* (Figure 7-20) extends from the Fault Zone to at least 150 m eastward along strike. Grades are generally around 1 - 2% Cu. This grade of mineralization extends from the Upper Kakontwe Formation contact 20 m into the *Série Récurrente* and gradually diminishes with increasing distance from the contact (Figure 7-17). Bornite tends to become more abundant than chalcopyrite northwards from the contact, suggesting an increase in Cu:S ratio, however, bornite tends to be localised in dolomite beds whereas chalcopyrite dominates in siltstone beds where it occurs with trace Mo and Re. Mineralization is best developed in siltstone, where it occurs as discrete 2 – 5 mm thick discontinuous veinlets or lenticles parallel or subparallel to foliation/bedding (Figure 7-21). These veinlets or lenticles are always associated with quartz/carbonate of a coarser grain size than the siltstone host, and commonly exhibit a strong structural control. Strain accommodated along bedding planes in the siltstone appears to have deformed earlier veinlets. Mineralization in dolomite is also vein-hosted, but without the strong structural control seen in the deformed siltstone. Chalcopyrite is best developed in reduced, siltstone beds were it occurs with trace Mo and Re.

Figure 7-20
Typical colour variation in the *Série Récurrente* between dolomite (purple) and siltstone (green)

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-21
Blebby and disseminated chalcopyrite in *Série Récurrente siltstone* at 148 m in drillhole KPU074. Both mineralization and bedding are deformed by parasitic folds.

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

7.4.5 Big Zinc

The Big Zinc is a zone of massive sphalerite mineralization in the Middle and Upper Kakontwe Formations in the immediate footwall to the Kipushi Fault Zone between the 1100 and 1650 m levels. Mineralization is discordant and occurs at least 100 m laterally along the footwall of the fault and extends up to 80 m into the footwall near the contact between the Middle and Upper Kakontwe Formations. The margins of the zone are characterised by a number of downward diverging 'apophyses' exhibiting a similar plunge to the rest of the Big Zinc (Figure 7-15). The zone diverges from the Kipushi Fault Zone with increasing depth.

The contacts of mineralization with the host Kakontwe dolomite are zoned over several metres as shown in Figure 7-22. Sphalerite on the margins of the mineralized zone, particularly at the terminations of apophyses, is often red and iron-rich (Figure 7-22) and associated with arsenopyrite, and commonly grades outwards to a thin (centimetres to decimetres) outermost pyrite zone. Minor chalcopyrite and galena may also occur adjacent the eastern and down-plunge margins. The outer (distal to the fault) contacts are commonly marked by an abundance of distinctive megacrystic and "mosaic-textured" white hydrothermal dolomite inter-grown with the sulphides (Figure 7-24).

The Big Zinc is mineralogically simple with the majority of the deposit comprising massive, monotonous equigranular to occasionally banded honey-brown sphalerite and pyrite (Figure 7-22). Mineralization textures commonly do not reflect primary textures within the host in any way. The sphalerite is zinc-rich (>45% Zn), iron-poor, and contains minor amounts of cadmium, silver, germanium and mercury. The northern side of the deposit, in the Upper Kakontwe Formation, hosts disseminated galena and tends to be more silver-rich than the southern side. Germanium enrichment is irregular, but more common on the southern side of the Big Zinc and at depth, particularly in very zinc-rich sphalerite. There is nothing to visually distinguish the very high grade (>55% Zn) and germanium rich (>100 ppm Ge) sphalerite from the majority of sphalerite within the Big Zinc.

Tennantite, bornite and chalcopyrite locally replace sphalerite in a 10 to 20 m thick pod of >100 m plunge extent within the Big Zinc. Smaller zones of tennantite mineralization have been seen elsewhere in the Big Zinc and Copper Nord Riche. These zones are associated with very high silver, cobalt, molybdenum grades and elevated gold (Figure 7-23).

Localised internal barren to lower grade "*stérile*" zones occur and were defined by Gécamines on the visual basis of 7% Zn and/or 1% Cu cut-offs. Drill core from these zones was generally not preserved by Gécamines.

Figure 7-22

Mineralization intersected in historical drillhole 1270/15/-40/SE: A) Chalcopyrite-dominated Fault Zone, B) reddish iron-rich sphalerite on the margins of the Big Zinc, and C) honey-coloured sphalerite in the central part of the Big Zinc

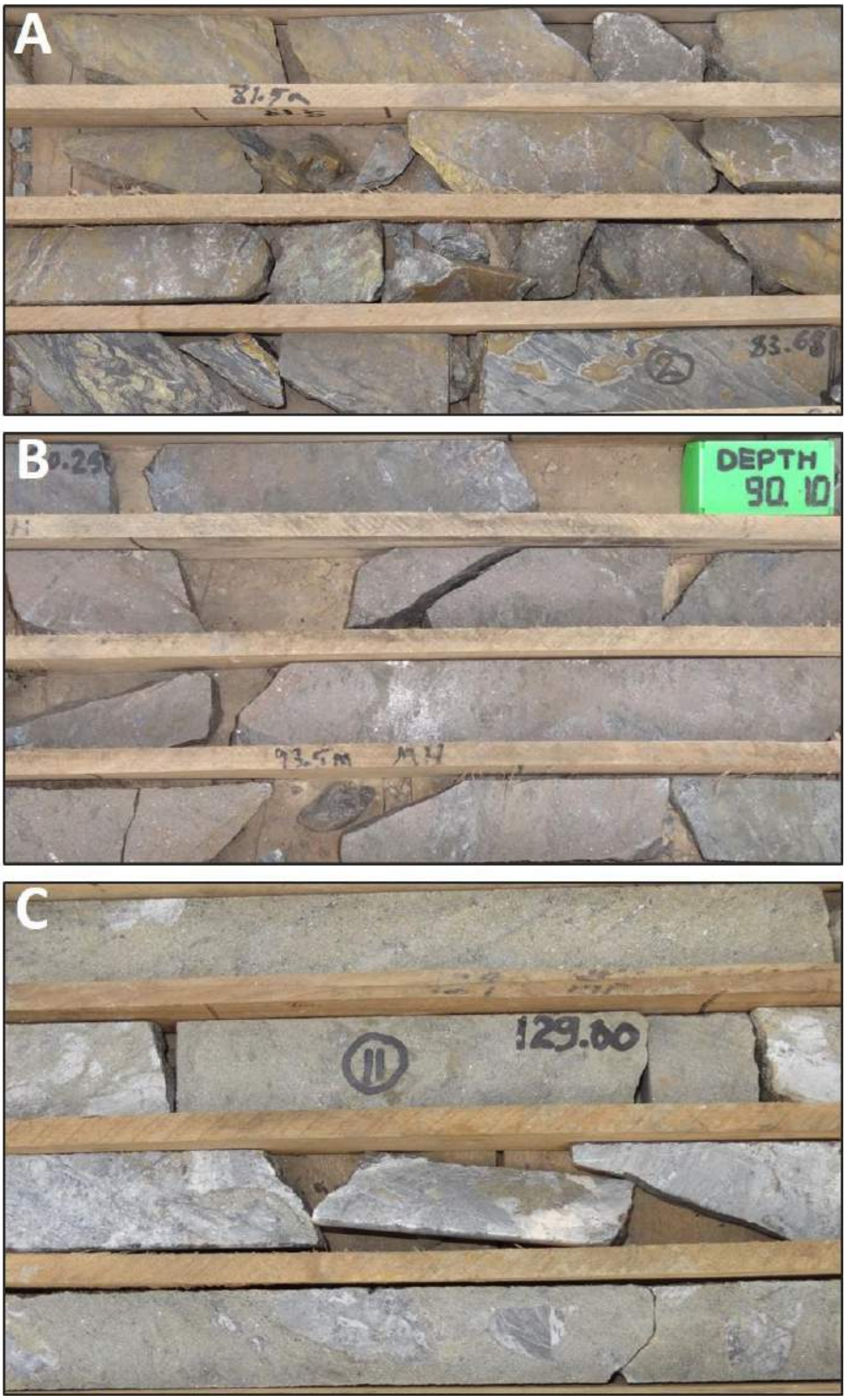
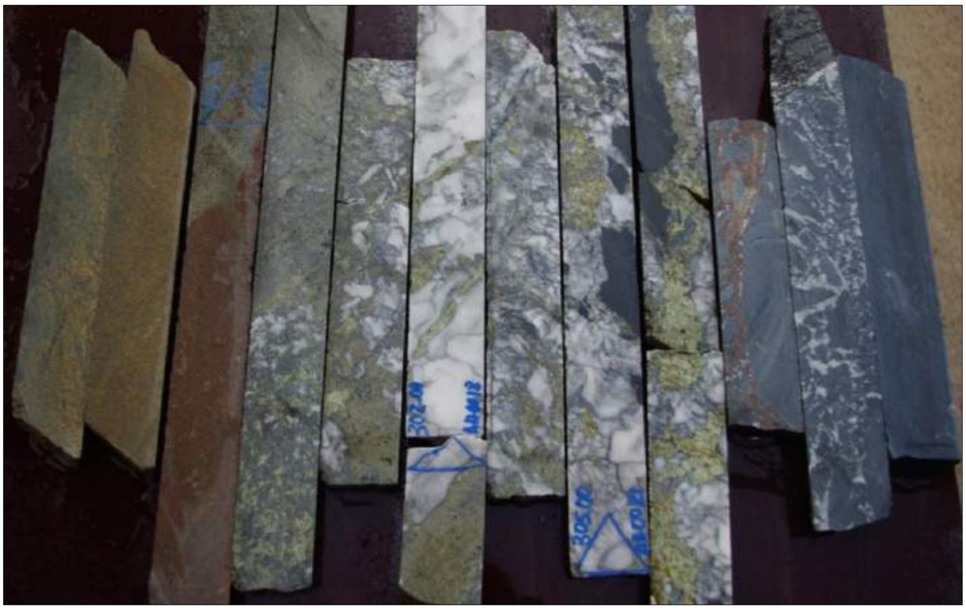


Figure 7-23

Mineral and metal zonation at the distal margin of the Big Zinc: ZnS > Zn(Fe)S ± PbS > Cpy > Pyrite ± Aspy > from the Big Zinc (left) to the footwall contact. Note the distinctive mosaic-textured megacrystic ore-stage dolomite.



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 7-24

Chalcopyrite-tennantite-bornite replacement within the Big Zinc, drillhole KPU040

Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

8 DEPOSIT TYPES

The mineral deposits at Kipushi are an example of carbonate-hosted copper-zinc-lead mineralization hosted in pipe-like fault breccia zones, as well as tabular zones. This deposit type tends to form irregular, discordant mineralized bodies within carbonate or calcareous sediments, forming massive pods, breccia/fault fillings and stockworks (Trueman, 1998). They often form pipe-like to tabular deposits strongly elongate in one direction. Zinc-lead rich mantos can project from the main zone of mineralization as replacement bodies parallel to bedding, as is the case at Kipushi.

This deposit type is associated with intracratonic platform and rifted continental margin sedimentary sequences which are typically folded and locally faulted (Cox and Bernstein, 1986). The host carbonate sediments were deposited in shallow marine, inter-tidal, sabkha, lagoonal or lacustrine environments and are often overlain unconformably by oxidised sandstone-siltstone-shale units. The largest deposits are Neoproterozoic in age and occur within thick sedimentary sequences.

No association with igneous rocks is observed. Mineralization forms as fault or breccia filling, and massive replacement mineralization with either abundant diagenetic pyrite or other source of sulphur (e.g. evaporates) acting as a precipitant of base metals in zones of high porosity and fluid flow. The presence of bitumen or other organic material is indicative of a reducing environment at the site of metal sulphide deposition. Deposits are usually coincident with a zone of dolomitisation. Pre-mineralization plumbing systems were typically created by karsting, faulting, collapse zones as a result of evaporate removal, and/or bedding plane aquifers and were enhanced by volume reduction during dolomitisation, ongoing carbonate dissolution and hydrothermal alteration (Trueman, 1998). It is considered that oxidised diagenetic fluids scavenged metals from clastic sediments from a source area with deposition in open spaces in reduced carbonates, often immediately below an unconformity.

A number of epigenetic copper-zinc-lead massive sulphide deposits are hosted in deformed platform carbonates of the Lufilian Arc. In the DRC, these are mostly hosted in carbonate units of the Kaponda, Kakontwe, Kipushi and Katete *(Série Récurrente)* Formations of the Nguba Group. These units are characterised by shallow water marine carbonates, predominantly dolomitic, associated with organic-rich facies (Kampunzu, *et el.*, 2009). Although most of these are relatively small, they include the major deposits of Kipushi and Kabwe which occur as irregular pipe-like bodies associated with collapse breccias and faults as well as lenticular bodies subparallel to stratigraphy. They tend to be surrounded by silicified dolomite. These carbonate-hosted copper-zinc-lead deposits tend to contain important by-products of silver, cadmium, vanadium, germanium and gallium.

Fluid inclusion and stable isotope data from Kipushi indicate that hydrothermal metal-bearing fluids evolved from formation brines during basin evolution and later tectonogenesis (Kampunzu, *et el.*, 2009). Ore fluid migration occurred mainly along major thrust zones and other structural discontinuities such as breccias, faults and karsts within the Katangan Supergroup resulting in metal sulphide deposition within favourable structures and reactive carbonate sequences. In the case of the Big Zinc, massive sphalerite mineralization is a result of extensive replacement of the host carbonates.

Other examples of this model include Tsumeb and Kombat in Namibia, Ruby Creek and Omar in Alaska, Apex in Utah, and M'Passa in the Republic of Congo.

9 EXPLORATION

No other relevant exploration work, other than drilling, has been carried out by KICO on the Project.

10 DRILLING

10.1 Historical Drilling

10.1.1 Drilling Methodology

Gécamines' drilling department (the *Mission de Sondages*) historically carried out the drilling. Underground core drilling involved drilling sections spaced 15 m apart along the Kipushi Fault Zone and Big Zinc and 12.5 m apart along the *Série Récurrente*, with each section consisting of a fan of between four and seven angled holes (Figure 10-1), the angle between the holes being approximately 15° (Kelly *et al.*, 2012). Sections are even-numbered south of Section 0 and odd-numbered to the north. Drilling was completed along the Kipushi Fault Zone from Section 0 to 19 along a 285 m strike length including a 100 – 130 m strike length which also tested the Big Zinc.

Cores from 49 holes out of 60 holes drilled from 1,272 metre-level that intersected the Big Zinc are stored under cover at Kipushi mine. The retained half core is in a generally good condition and is mostly BQ in size with subordinate NQ core. In general, only mineralized intersections were retained, with only minor barren or "*stérile*" zones preserved in the core trays. The "*stérile*" zones were based on a visual cut-off of 1% Cu and 7% Zn, and where preserved are observed to contain variable sphalerite mineralization in the form of veins and disseminations.

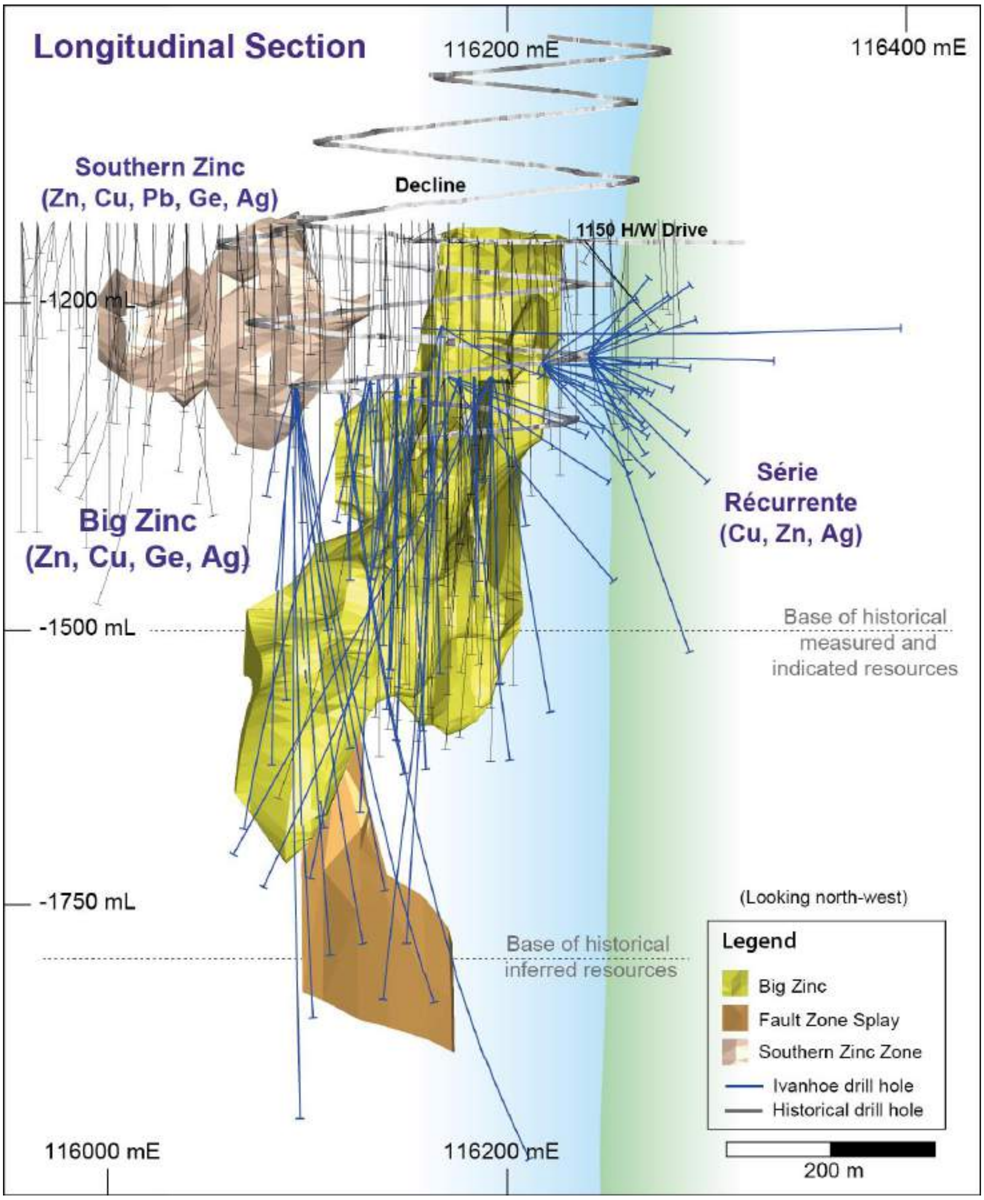
The drilling methodology is described in Kelly *et al.,* (2012). On completion of each hole, collar and downhole surveys were conducted and the following information was recorded on drill log sheets:

- Hole number, with collar location, length, inclination and direction;
- Start and completion dates of drilling;
- Collar location (X, Y, Z coordinates, azimuth and inclination;
- Hole length and deviation;
- Core lengths and recoveries;
- Geological and mineralogical descriptions (often simplified);
- Assay results; and
- Hydrology and temperature.

IMC noted that some of the drill log sheets contained missing information.

A total of 84 holes intersected the Big Zinc zone of which 55 were surveyed downhole at a nominal 50 m spacing. Gécamines sampling tended to be based on lengths representing mineable zones, with little attention paid to geology and mineralization (Kelly *et al.*, 2012).

Figure 10-1
Long Section of the Big Zinc Zone showing the projection of drillhole traces for Gécamines and Ivanhoe drillholes



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

10.1.2 Drillhole Database

The Mineral Corporation captured hardcopy information from the log sheets into a digital database, with the data being encoded by a local team. The following data were captured:

- Drillhole ID, collar coordinates, azimuth, inclination, length, core recovery, date of completion and remarks;
- Assay results for Zn, Cu, Pb, S, Fe and As;

- Geological and mineralization log, as standardised simple codes;
- Downhole survey data; and
- Hydrology data.

Validation of the captured data was undertaken by The Mineral Corporation. A total of 762 holes for a total of 93,000 m and 7,500 samples for a total of 51,500 assays were captured.

In addition, MSA undertook a data capturing exercise of drillholes from digital scans of hard copy geological logs. This is described further in Item 14.

10.2 KICO Drilling

All work carried out during the KICO underground drilling project was performed according to documented standard operating procedures for the Project. These procedures covered all aspects of the programme including drilling methodology, collar and downhole surveying, metre marking, oriented drill core mark-ups, core photography, geological and geotechnical logging, and sampling.

10.2.1 Drilling Methodology

The Kipushi mine, which was placed on care and maintenance in 1993, flooded in early 2011 due to a lack of pumping maintenance over an extended period. Water reached 851 m below surface at its peak. Following dewatering and access to the main working level in December 2013, a 25,400 m underground drilling programme was carried out by KICO between March 2014 and October 2015, with the cut-off date of 16 December 2016 for data included in this Technical Report.

The drilling was designed to confirm and update Kipushi's Historical Estimate and to further expand the drilled extents of mineralisation on strike and at depth. Specifically the objectives of the drilling programme were to:

- Conduct confirmatory drilling to validate the Historical Estimate within Kipushi's Big Zinc deposit and Fault Zone and qualify them as current Mineral Resources prepared in conformance with the Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum (CIM) standards as required by National Instrument 43-101.
- Conduct extension drilling to test the deeper portions of the Big Zinc and Fault Zone below the 1,500 metre-level.
- Test for deeper extensions to the Big Zinc by drilling from the 1,272 metre-level hanging wall drift and from various locations on the footwall decline.
- Conduct exploration drilling to test areas that have not been previously evaluated, such as the deeper portions of the Fault Zone and extensions to the high-grade copper mineralization of the mine's *Nord Riche*.
- Gain an improved understanding of geology and controls on mineralization.

Underground drilling of the various mineralized zones was carried out from the footwall ramp and the hangingwall drift on the 1,272 metre-level. Drilling at the project was undertaken by Major drilling SPRL from March 1, 2014 until the end of September 2014 when Titan Drilling Congo SARL took over diamond drilling operations. Titan Drilling operates two Boart Longyear LM90 electro-hydraulic underground drill rigs.

Drilling was carried out on the same 15 m spaced sections used by Gécamines and comprised twin holes, infill holes and step-out exploration holes. Drilling on each section comprised a fan of between four and seven declined holes. The angle between the holes was +/- 15°. Drilling has been completed from the 1,272 metre-level drill drive along the Kipushi Fault Zone from Section 0 to 19 (see Figure 6-1 for section lines) and along a 285 m strike length, including a 100 to 130 m strike length in the vicinity of the footwall of the Big Zinc. Further northeast along the Kipushi Fault Zone, drilling from the same level has been partially completed along a 30 m strike length between Sections 21 to 23.

Drilling was mostly NQ-TW (51 mm diameter) size with holes largely inclined downwards at various orientations to intersect specific targets within the Big Zinc, Fault Zone, *Nord Riche* and *Série Récurrente* (Figure 10-1). Along the section lines, the drillholes intersected mineralization between 10 m and 50 m apart within the Big Zinc and adjacent Fault Zone, and up to 100 m apart in the deeper parts of the Fault Zone.

As at the effective date of this report, a total of 97 holes had been drilled for 25,419 m including 51 holes that intersected the Big Zinc (Table 10-1). Drillhole locations are shown in Figure 10-1 and summary parameters in Table 10-1.

Table 10-1
Underground drilling summary

Hole ID	Easting (m)	Northing (m)	RL (m)	Depth (m)	Azimuth	Dip	Start Date	End Date
KPU001	116173.47	194400.09	-1221.51	613.70	298.23	-66.35	01/03/2014	19/03/2014
KPU002	116173.47	194400.09	-1221.51	732.40	298.79	-60.57	19/03/2014	02/04/2014
KPU003	116173.25	194400.11	-1220.91	587.40	272.35	-62.69	02/04/2014	11/04/2014
KPU004	116308.92	194474.12	-1250.46	167.50	6.67	-45.56	02/04/2014	09/04/2014
KPU005	116308.90	194473.66	-1250.75	290.60	4.13	-68.14	09/04/2014	26/04/2014
KPU006	116308.08	194473.85	-1250.66	116.80	344.63	-50.01	19/06/2014	24/06/2014
KPU007	116175.19	194367.83	-1221.88	453.10	40.16	-89.98	15/04/2014	23/05/2014
KPU008	116308.97	194474.07	-1249.14	105.60	4.60	-5.21	26/04/2014	05/05/2014
KPU009	116309.02	194473.81	-1247.10	98.80	8.13	36.53	09/05/2014	03/06/2014
KPU010	116173.15	194400.73	-1220.30	245.80	330.17	-19.24	26/05/2014	31/05/2014
KPU011	116308.96	194474.06	-1249.54	74.20	3.96	-25.97	03/06/2014	05/06/2014
KPU012	116308.97	194473.90	-1250.75	74.80	7.49	-59.34	05/06/2014	07/06/2014
KPU013	116308.09	194473.85	-1249.97	101.80	347.04	-42.82	09/06/2014	11/06/2014
KPU014	116308.12	194473.78	-1249.54	80.80	343.81	-22.94	12/06/2014	13/06/2014
KPU015	116308.14	194473.76	-1249.05	71.80	342.82	-3.51	13/06/2014	15/06/2014
KPU016	116308.12	194473.75	-1248.07	83.80	346.78	-20.55	15/06/2014	17/06/2014
KPU017	116308.25	194473.28	-1246.90	19.50	343.03	40.26	18/06/2014	19/06/2014
KPU018	116308.32	194473.33	-1246.92	110.70	344.49	40.62	26/06/2014	29/06/2014
KPU019	116312.30	194475.07	-1246.63	110.80	35.92	38.23	03/07/2014	05/07/2014
KPU020	116312.60	194475.60	-1247.76	101.10	35.55	18.41	04/07/2014	08/07/2014
KPU021	116313.32	194476.85	-1250.43	77.80	32.94	-19.46	08/07/2014	10/07/2014
KPU022	116194.75	194309.20	-1271.31	41.00	307.44	-42.44	09/07/2014	11/08/2014
KPU023	116312.70	194475.80	-1250.60	110.80	35.92	-38.03	11/07/2014	14/07/2014
KPU024	116194.48	194309.26	-1271.20	5.80	307.53	-28.75	11/07/2014	11/07/2014

KPU025	116194.59	194309.16	-1271.46	83.80	310.26	-39.55	11/07/2014	15/07/2014
KPU026	116313.01	194476.21	-1249.02	166.70	35.40	-1.50	14/07/2014	19/07/2014
KPU027	116194.45	194309.35	-1271.09	251.80	303.55	-28.93	15/07/2014	23/07/2014
KPU028	116237.92	194467.66	-1255.88	230.60	296.27	-4.74	21/07/2014	08/08/2014
KPU029	116194.37	194309.02	-1270.74	251.80	295.90	-29.48	24/07/2014	28/07/2014
KPU030	116194.45	194309.20	-1270.79	302.80	292.97	-30.77	29/08/2014	31/08/2014
KPU031	116194.42	194309.06	-1270.93	299.80	294.36	-35.50	31/07/2014	08/08/2014
KPU032	116238.25	194467.63	-1255.31	221.80	304.61	4.13	08/08/2014	16/08/2014
KPU033	116136.06	194343.44	-1270.12	140.70	296.05	-31.33	14/08/2014	16/08/2014
KPU034	116136.20	194343.37	-1269.19	101.80	296.15	-0.91	16/08/2014	18/08/2014
KPU035	116239.19	194468.87	-1256.93	38.80	30.86	-0.31	16/08/2014	18/09/2014
KPU036	116239.15	194468.87	-1256.26	131.80	334.68	-15.85	18/08/2014	22/08/2014
KPU037	116135.88	194343.15	-1270.58	182.80	284.03	-40.32	19/08/2014	25/08/2014
KPU038	116239.00	194469.10	-1255.81	131.80	334.37	-2.09	22/08/2014	26/08/2014
KPU039	116241.03	194467.60	-1255.67	128.80	356.63	-0.37	27/08/2014	29/08/2014
KPU040	116013.70	194436.16	-1269.42	266.80	118.76	-65.85	27/08/2014	31/08/2014
KPU041	116241.04	194467.80	-1255.94	101.80	357.26	-13.54	30/08/2014	02/09/2014
KPU042	116013.98	194435.95	-1269.44	230.80	120.30	-52.50	01/09/2014	05/09/2014
KPU043	116240.92	194467.81	-1255.20	101.80	354.74	15.57	02/09/2014	05/09/2014
KPU044	116240.91	194467.10	-1254.49	122.90	353.84	28.97	05/09/2014	08/09/2014
KPU045	116242.74	194466.82	-1256.72	107.90	22.54	-28.57	09/09/2014	12/09/2014
KPU046	116029.75	194463.65	-1269.05	200.80	133.33	-44.50	05/09/2014	14/09/2014
KPU047	116242.89	194467.23	-1255.82	102.10	21.00	-0.47	12/09/2014	16/09/2014
KPU048	116029.70	194462.60	-1269.35	8.80	122.00	-65.00		
KPU049	116242.80	194466.99	-1256.31	101.80	20.29	-14.92	16/09/2014	18/09/2014
KPU050	116028.21	194463.29	-1269.34	200.80	129.60	-50.10	16/09/2014	19/09/2014
KPU051	116027.70	194463.80	-1269.35	341.80	128.40	-75.50	21/09/2014	04/10/2014
KPU052	116243.35	194466.19	-1257.13	143.80	23.28	-44.49	21/09/2014	24/09/2014
KPU053	116242.32	194466.65	-1257.12	140.80	355.46	-46.67	25/09/2014	29/09/2014
KPU054	116242.26	194466.98	-1257.13	134.80	355.21	-29.11	30/10/2014	04/10/2014
KPU055	116028.13	194463.36	-1268.97	300.20	127.41	-69.21	04/10/2014	15/10/2014
KPU056	116035.23	194476.41	-1268.46	332.80	115.34	-76.85	05/10/2014	21/10/2014
KPU057	116022.04	194448.88	-1268.92	315.20	119.30	-73.90	17/10/2014	23/10/2014
KPU058	116042.88	194489.33	-1268.10	200.60	122.51	-36.22	23/10/2014	30/10/2014
KPU059	116022.39	194448.72	-1268.87	212.80	127.07	-54.17	23/10/2014	27/10/2014
KPU060	116022.98	194448.53	-1268.67	27.00	120.15	-38.73	27/10/2014	28/10/2014
KPU061	116023.26	194449.99	-1268.72	360.40	71.56	-81.90	29/10/2014	07/11/2014
KPU062	116022.73	194448.91	-1268.73	293.80	125.51	-65.56	30/10/2014	06/11/2014
KPU063	116040.98	194505.68	-1267.43	74.20	135.53	-34.49	07/11/2014	12/11/2014
KPU064	116023.41	194449.92	-1268.90	300.10	125.51	-65.56	09/11/2014	20/11/2014
KPU065	116042.10	194507.00	-1267.04	179.90	135.20	-27.17	12/11/2014	20/11/2014
KPU066	116029.30	194530.27	-1267.91	230.80	121.92	-61.06	21/11/2014	28/11/2014
KPU067	116012.38	194435.23	-1269.28	399.00	149.53	-83.15	21/11/2014	07/12/2014
KPU068	116029.99	194529.94	-1266.93	170.80	120.80	-19.77	28/11/2014	03/12/2014
KPU069	116037.31	194543.36	-1266.95	302.80	118.35	-69.11	04/12/2014	10/12/2014
KPU070	116038.61	194542.73	-1266.55	167.90	124.71	-34.32	10/12/2014	12/12/2014
KPU071	116035.20	194476.35	-1268.40	302.80	116.97	-61.23	08/01/2015	15/01/2015
KPU072	116037.23	194542.63	-1267.15	521.80	189.29	-64.41	09/01/2015	28/01/2015
KPU073	116043.98	194491.78	-1266.65	165.00	55.13	-17.58	16/01/2015	23/01/2015
KPU074	116044.06	194491.87	-1267.30	188.90	55.19	-30.47	24/01/2015	31/03/2015
KPU075	116037.43	194541.45	-1267.21	527.80	171.86	-57.11	28/01/2015	16/02/2015
KPU076	116042.07	194492.45	-1267.95	140.80	43.04	-22.46	02/02/2015	07/02/2015
KPU077	116236.74	194259.06	-1284.41	500.80	281.45	-52.40	08/02/2015	23/02/2015
KPU078	116042.47	194491.79	-1268.31	245.80	52.60	-51.96	18/02/2015	26/03/2015

KPU079	116185.99	194234.43	-1277.91	719.80	316.75	-50.71	26/02/2015	12/03/2015
KPU080	116037.35	194546.21	-1268.05	311.90	24.30	-80.48	13/03/2015	20/03/2015
KPU081	116185.46	194234.06	-1278.16	632.80	304.66	-55.01	20/03/2015	04/04/2015
KPU082	116185.29	194234.30	-1277.96	482.60	307.00	-44.06	04/04/2015	13/04/2015
KPU083	116184.66	194234.76	-1278.29	383.30	306.73	-33.91	14/05/2015	22/04/2015
KPU084	116036.43	194510.81	-1267.65	361.30	340.18	-75.79	04/05/2015	11/05/2015
KPU085	116028.72	194529.93	-1266.93	251.70	120.83	-50.98	11/05/2015	17/05/2015
KPU086	116038.23	194543.90	-1267.67	221.70	125.50	-51.00	17/05/2015	20/06/2015
KPU087	116040.11	194553.15	-1267.05	192.00	112.10	-45.40	21/05/2015	25/05/2015
KPU088	116185.53	194233.15	-1278.09	27.00	0.00	0.00	25/05/2015	27/05/2015
KPU089	116185.53	194233.15	-1278.09	642.00	301.60	-63.80	26/05/2015	09/06/2015
KPU090	116192.73	194226.94	-1278.93	551.80	312.52	-47.92	23/07/2015	14/07/2015
KPU091	116185.55	194233.83	-1278.07	775.80	300.50	-58.77	23/06/2015	14/07/2015
KPU092	116185.63	194234.11	-1278.01	633.00	307.47	-52.63	15/07/2015	30/07/2015
KPU093	116234.80	194252.70	-1283.16	488.10	311.00	-43.00	31/07/2015	11/08/2015
KPU093W1	116234.80	194252.70	-1283.16	1001.10	315.50	-46.50	12/08/2015	10/09/2015
KPU094	116176.75	194235.40	-1276.23	257.80	296.02	-22.47	08/10/2015	14/10/2015
KPU095	116176.77	194235.70	-1276.66	551.10	302.46	-48.43	15/10/2015	26/10/2015
KPU096	116190.20	194229.10	-1278.27	425.60	297.38	-41.60	29/09/2015	07/10/2015
KPU097	116190.57	194228.90	-1278.07	452.80	297.66	-49.84	18/09/2015	28/09/2015

10.2.2 Core Handling

Drilling was undertaken and core recovered using standard wireline drilling. Core was carefully placed in aluminium core trays in the same orientation as it came out of the core barrel. Core trays were marked with the drillhole number, the start and end depths, a sequential tray number, and an arrow indicating the down-hole orientation.

Core trays were delivered from underground to the core storage facility at the mine site.

10.2.3 Core Recovery

Core recovery was determined prior to geological logging and sampling. Standard core recovery forms were usually completed for each hole by the technician or geologist. Core recovery was also measured by the driller and included in drilling records.

Core recovery averaged 99.14% and visual inspection by the QP confirmed the core recovery to be excellent.

The Gécamines drillhole cores are in variable condition having been stored for long periods of time and moved around on occasions. No core recovery data are available from the original Gécamines records.

10.2.4 Collar and Down-hole Surveys

All of the KICO drillhole collars have been surveyed by a qualified surveyor. The surveyor was notified of the anticipated time of the rig move to ensure proper mark-up of the hole, and to be on site to monitor the positioning of the rig.

Gécamines collars were located in a local mine grid coordinate system. The mine grid coordinates were converted to Gaussian coordinates and validated against the surveys of the underground workings.

Downhole surveys were completed for all of the KICO holes, with the majority surveyed at either 3 m or 5 m intervals. A few holes were surveyed at 30 m intervals. The KICO holes were surveyed using a Reflex EZ-SHOT™ downhole survey tool. As a check on accuracy and precision on this method, 13 holes were also surveyed using a Gyro Sealed Probe downhole survey instrument. No significant discrepancies were noted between the EMS and Gyro tools.

Downhole surveys are available for many of the Gécamines drillholes and were generally surveyed at 50 m down-hole intervals. No details are available regarding the survey instruments used. Where no downhole survey data are available for a drillhole, the collar survey inclination and azimuth were used as the downhole survey.

10.2.5 Geological Logging

Standard logging methods, geological codes, and sampling conventions were established prior to and implemented throughout the project. All of the drillholes were geologically logged by qualified geologists employed by KICO. For the first 14 holes (KPU001 to KPU014) logging of lithology, alteration, mineralization, and structure was done on standardised paper templates and then captured and validated on import into MS Access. From Hole KPU015 onwards, all logging was done directly into MS Access. All geotechnical logging was done directly into MS Access.

All cores were photographed both wet and dry prior to sampling.

A portable Niton XRF analyser was used to provide an initial estimate, on a metre by metre basis, of the concentrations of the more important elements present in the drill core.

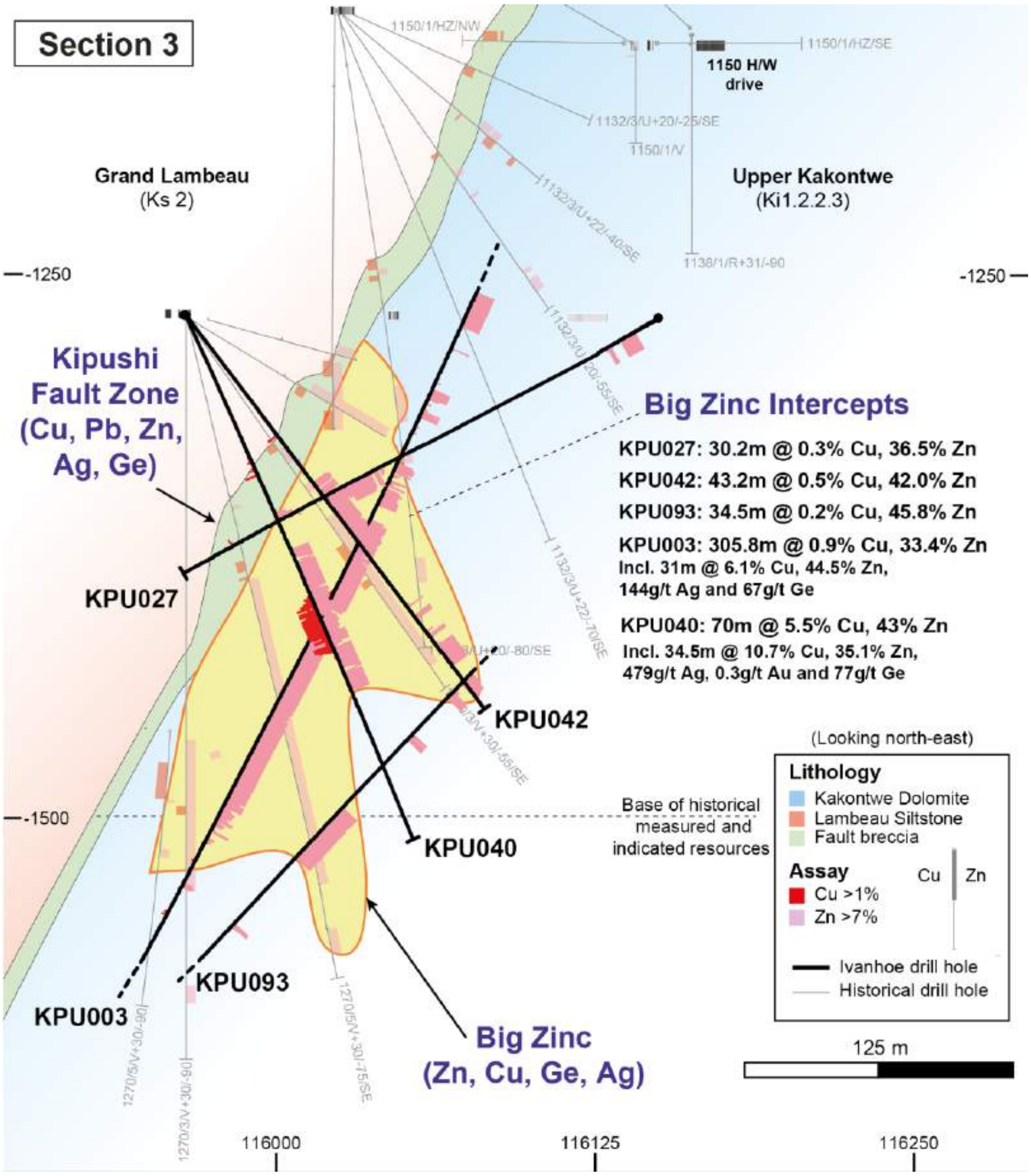
10.2.6 Results

Drilling has confirmed that zinc and copper mineralization extends below the extent of the Techpro historical estimate to 1,810 m below surface with the deepest intersection recorded in hole KPU079.

In addition to confirming substantial widths and zinc grades within the Big Zinc, some of the KICO holes also intersected zones of high-grade copper and precious metals within the Big Zinc, e.g. drillhole KPU040 which returned 34.5 m grading 35.1% Zn, 10.7% Cu, 479g/t Ag, 77g/t Ge and 0.30g/t Au.

Figure 10-2 to Figure 10-6 show schematic sections illustrating the KICO drilling results within the Big Zinc and Fault Zone. The geometry of the Big Zinc and copper- and zinc-rich mineralized zones at depth below the Big Zinc are shown schematically in Figure 10-7.

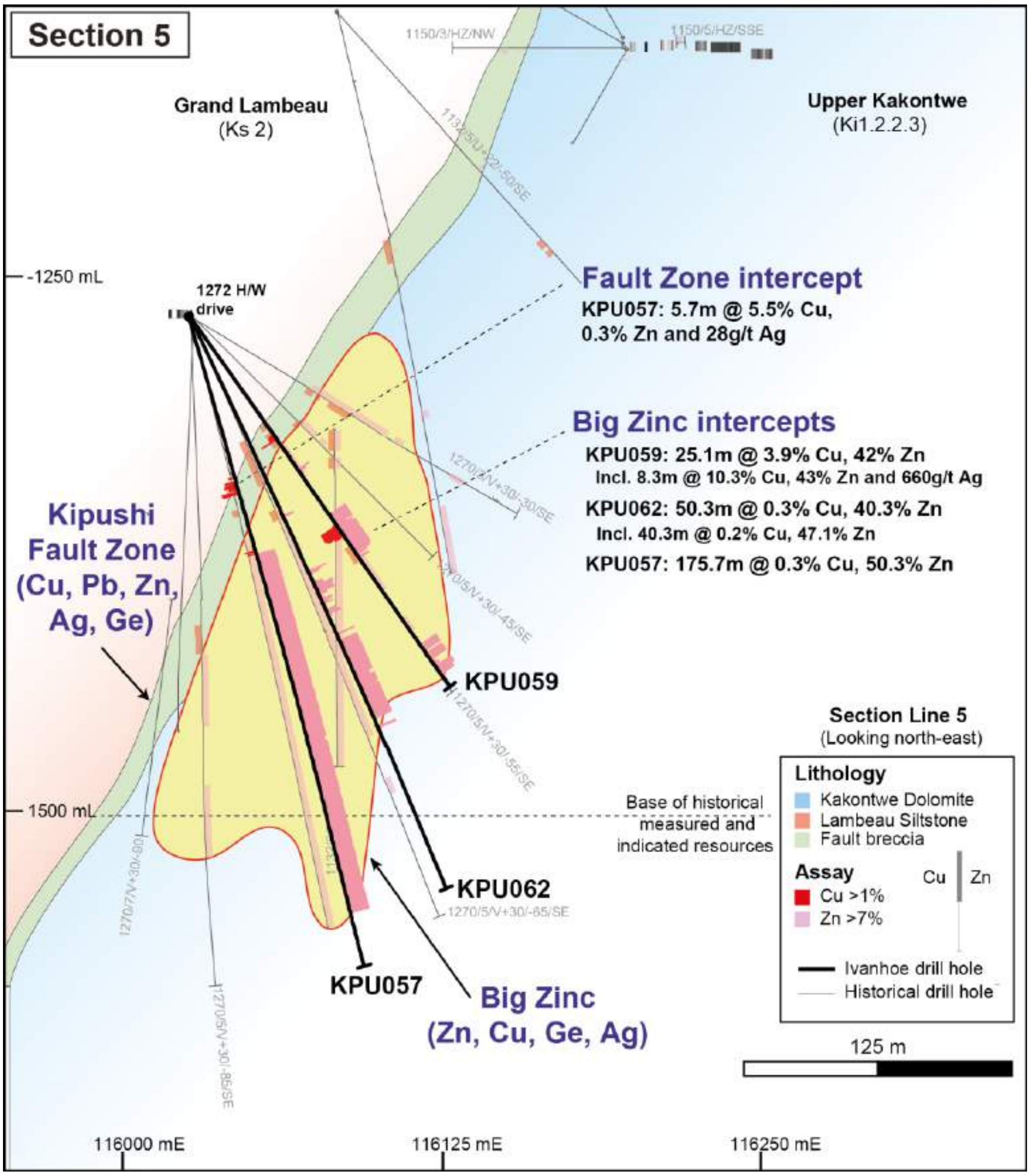
Figure 10-2
Schematic drill section 3 showing confirmation drillholes KPU003 and KPU040 through the Big Zinc zone



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 10-3

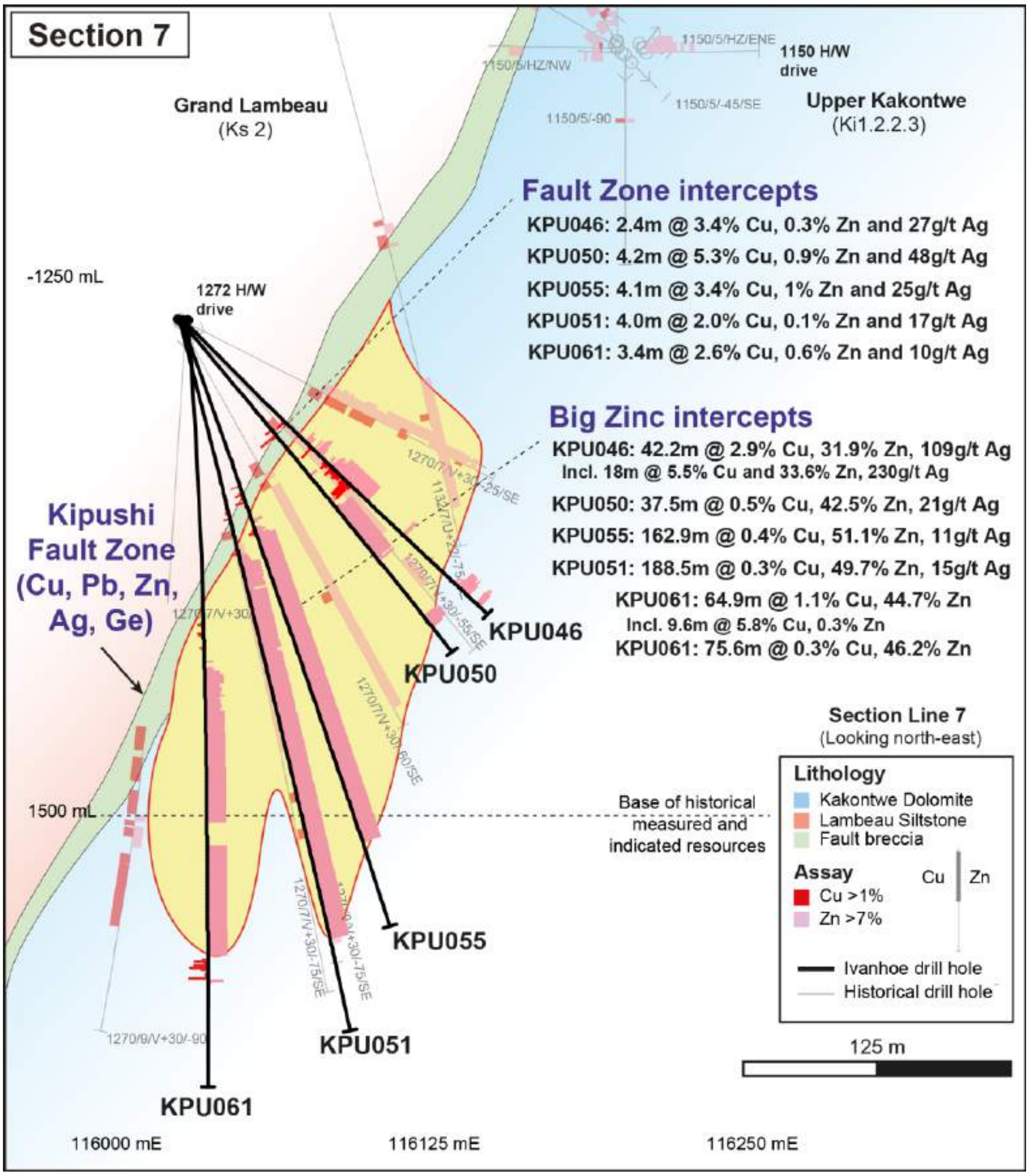
Schematic drill section 5 showing confirmation drillholes KPU057, KPU059, KPU061 and KPU062 through the Big Zinc zone



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 10-4

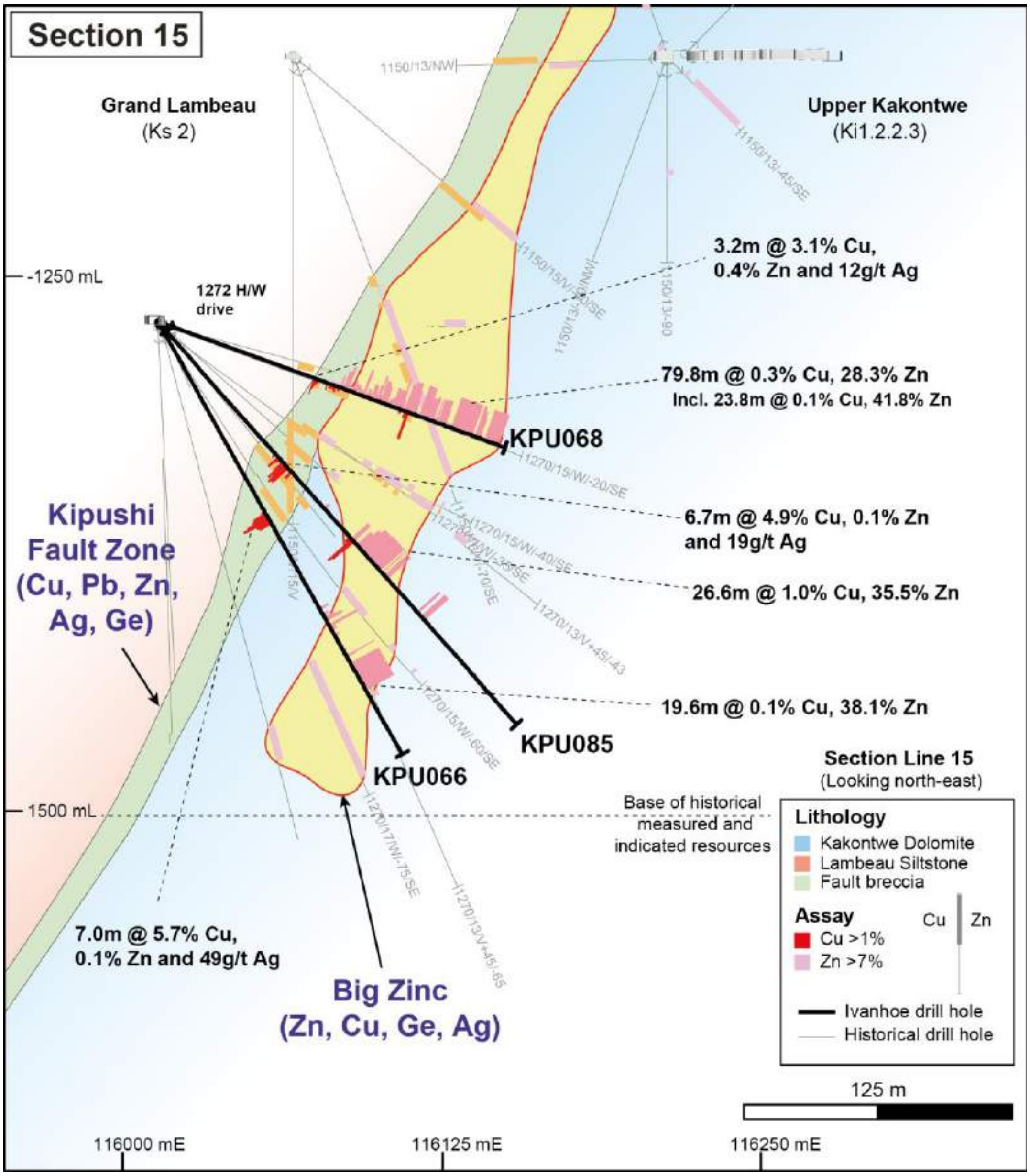
Schematic drill section 7 showing confirmation drillholes KPU046, KPU050, KPU051 and KPU055 through the Big Zinc zone



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 10-5

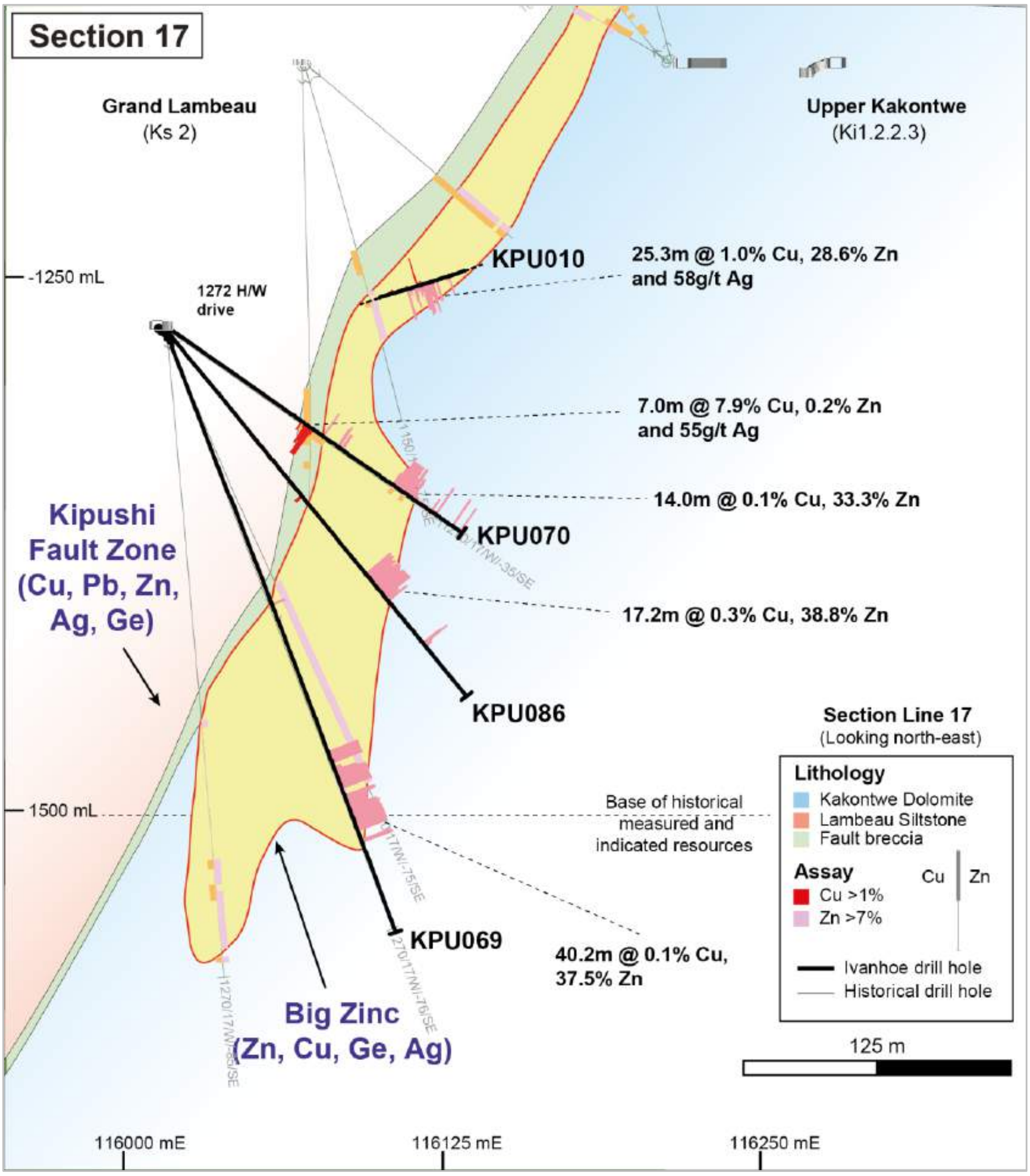
Schematic drill section 15 showing confirmation drillholes KPU066 and KPU068 through the Big Zinc zone



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

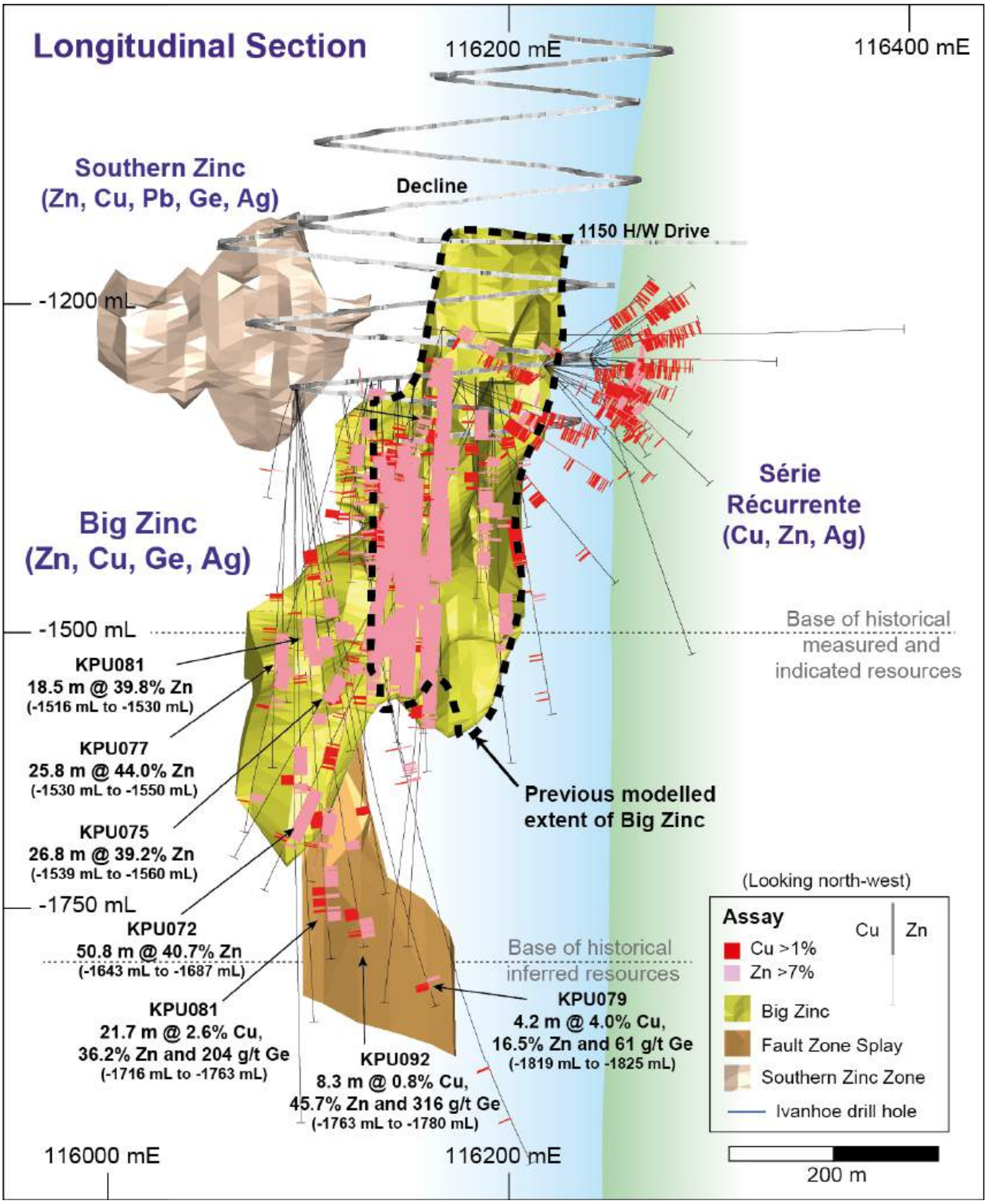
Figure 10-6

Schematic drill section 17 showing confirmation drillholes KPU069 and KPU070 through the Big Zinc zone



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Figure 10-7
Schematic drill section looking northwest showing drillholes KPU079 and KPU081 through the Big Zinc zone, and showing additional intersections at depth



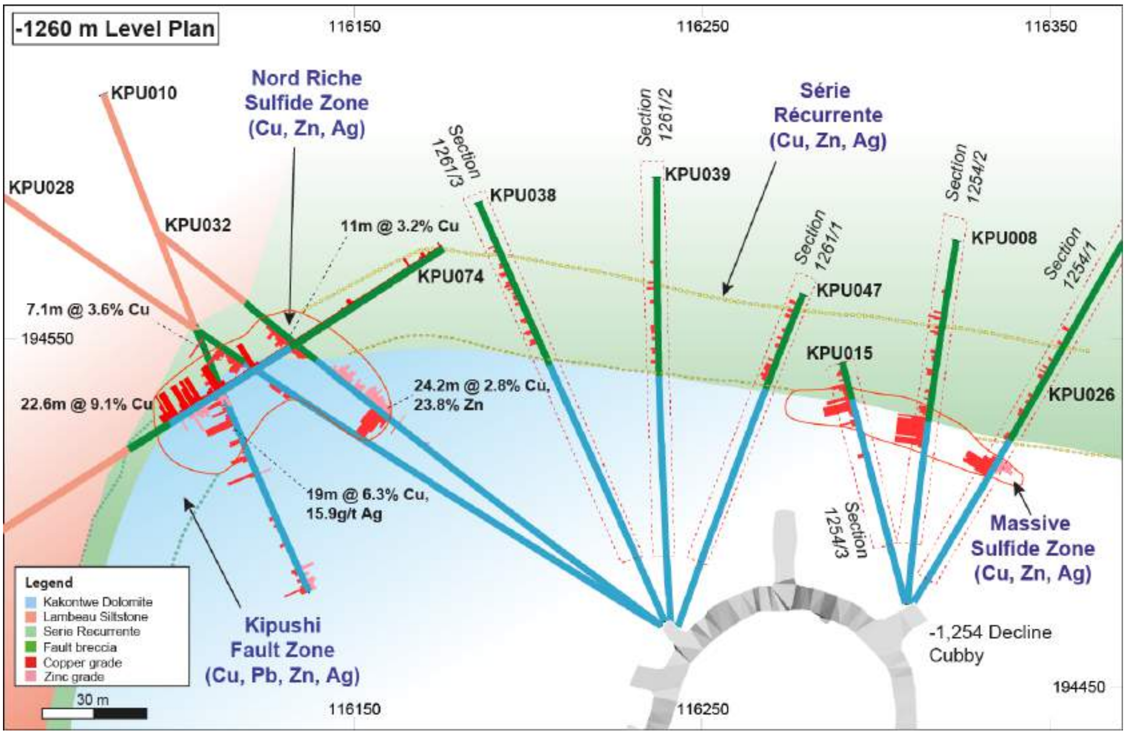
Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

A plan projection of KICO drilling in the *Nord Riche* and *Série Récurrente* zones is shown in Figure 10-8. Holes were drilled to test interpreted down-plunge extensions below the level of historical mining in the *Nord Riche* area. These holes intersected zones of disseminated and massive sulphides (chalcopyrite and sphalerite) as shown in section in Figure 7-17.

The *Série Récurrente* contains a westerly-plunging lense of high-grade copper-rich massive sulphide that extends from the *Série Récurrente* into the Upper Kakontwe. Drilling by Gécamines intersected this zone up-plunge but it was not mined.

Figure 10-8

Drill plan of 1,260 m level showing KICO drilling in the *Nord Riche* and *Série Récurrente* zones

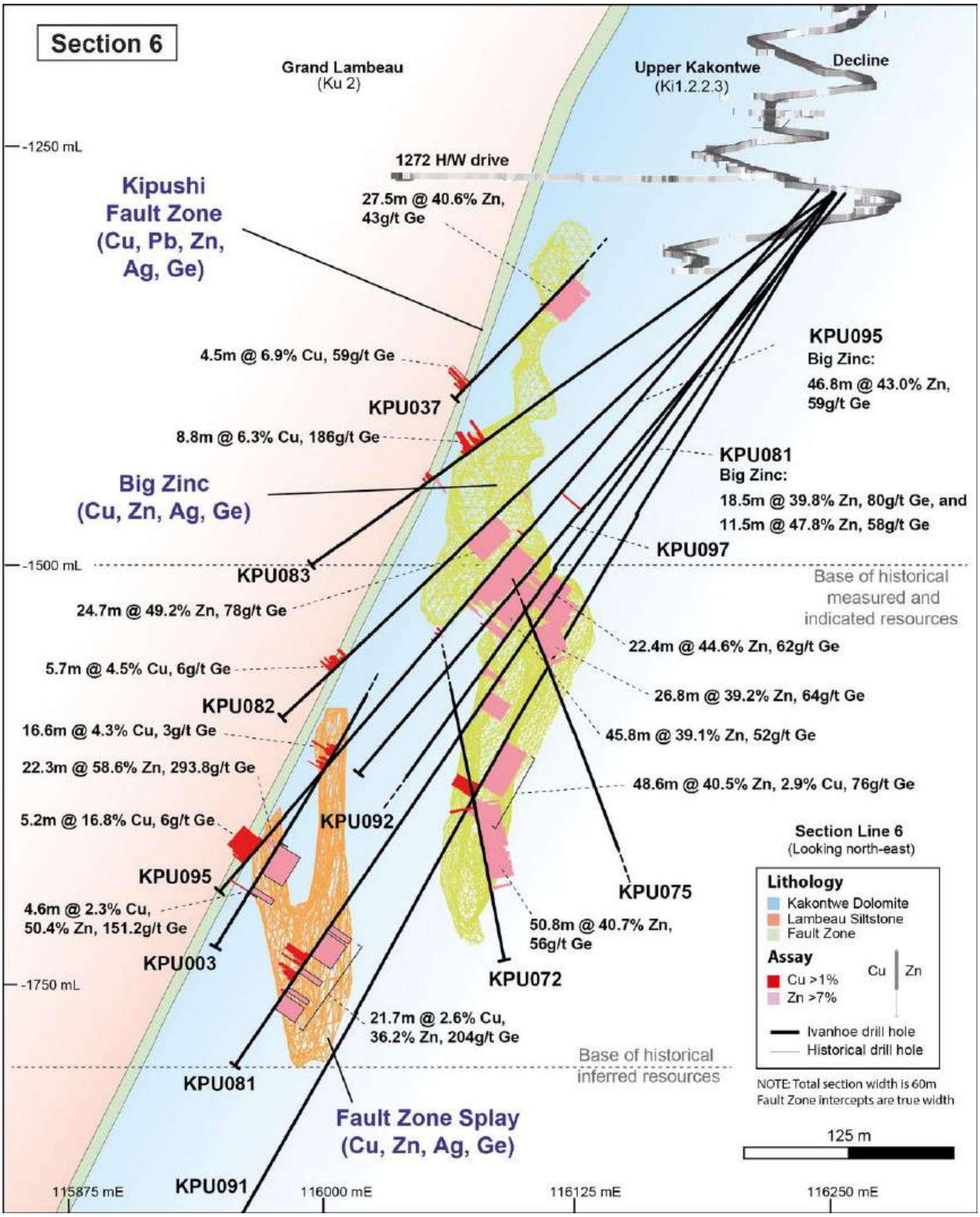


Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

In addition to confirming substantial widths and zinc grades within the Big Zinc, some of the KICO holes have also intersected zones of high-grade copper and precious metals within the Big Zinc. A high grade massive sulphide lense within the *Série Récurrenté* and a germanium-rich zone that occurs as a splay off the Fault Zone at depth have also been defined (Figure 10-9).

Figure 10-9

Schematic drill section 6 showing confirmation drillholes through the Big Zinc zone and the Fault Zone Splay



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

10.2.7 QP Comment

In the opinion of the MSA QP, the quantity and quality of data collected in the KICO underground drilling programme, including lithology, mineralization, collar and downhole surveys, in sufficient to support Mineral Resource estimation. This is substantiated further as follows:

- Core recoveries are typically excellent,
- Drillhole orientations are mostly appropriate for the mineralization styles at Kipushi and adequately cover the geometry of the various mineralized zones, although several deep holes intersect the Fault Zone and Fault Zone Splay at a narrow angle,
- Core logging meets industry standards and conforms to exploration best practice,
- Collar surveys were performed by qualified personnel and meet industry standards,
- Downhole surveys were carried out at appropriate intervals to provide confident 3D representation of the drillholes,
- No material factors were identified from the data collection that would adversely affect use of the data in Mineral Resource estimation.

11 SAMPLE PREPARATION, ANALYSES AND SECURITY

11.1 Gécamines Sampling Approach

Sampling by Gécamines was selective and lower grade portions of the mineralized intersections were not always sampled. Drill cores had a diameter of between 30 and 70 mm. The core sampling and sample preparation procedures were reported as follows:

- the cores were sawn in half,
- sample lengths were based on homogenous zones of mineralization ranging from less than 1 m to greater than 10 m in length with an average length of 3.44 m, and divided into three categories (copper-copper/zinc, zinc, and copper-lead-zinc) and sampled,
- waste material was not sampled;
- remaining half core was placed in core trays and stored,
- aggregated half core samples were sent to the Gécamines laboratory for crushing, splitting, milling, and sieving.

11.2 Gécamines Sample Preparation and Analytical Approach

All of the historical assays on samples generated by Gécamines drilling at Kipushi are believed to have been carried out at the Gécamines mine laboratory at Kipushi. Mr M Robertson from MSA inspected the laboratory on February 21, 2013. Gécamines laboratory staff at the time of the visit were reportedly involved with the processing of the historical samples and provided the following insight into sample preparation and analytical procedures as well as quality control (QC) procedures in place at the time (Figure 11-1):

- Samples were prepared using a belt-driven jaw crusher and two roller crushers to a nominal size of <5 mm.
- A split of the crushed material was then ground in a pulveriser (which has subsequently been removed from the laboratory) to 100% <100 mesh.
- Compressed air and brushes were used to clean equipment. It is not clear whether barren flush material was also used.
- Sample analysis was carried out by a four-acid digest and AAS finish, for copper, lead, zinc, arsenic and iron. Results were reported in percentages. The laboratory then made composite samples of grouped categories, analyzed these for germanium, cobalt, silver, cadmium, and rhenium, and reported results in ppm. No gold analyses were undertaken. The original GBC Avanta AAS instrument is still operational.
- Sulphur analysis was carried out by the "classical" gravimetric method.
- Various Gécamines internal standards were used, with a standard read after every 6th routine sample. A blank was reportedly read at the beginning of each batch. Repeat readings were also

carried out; The QC results were apparently not reported on the assay certificates and the data are therefore not available.

- As an additional QC measure, samples were also reportedly sent to the central Gécamines laboratory in Likasi for check analyses.
- It does not appear that samples were submitted for check analysis to laboratories external to Gécamines.

Figure 11-1
Sample preparation and wet chemistry analytical laboratory at Kipushi

 **A** Belt-driven jaw and roller crushers	 **B** Site of pulveriser (now removed) against far wall
 **C** GBC Avanta AAS instrument reportedly used in the original analytical work from 1990-1993	 **D** Diluted standards currently in use at the Kipushi laboratory

11.3 KICO Sample Preparation Methods

All sample preparation, analyses and security measures were carried out under standard operating procedures set up by KICO for the Kipushi project. These procedures have been examined by the QP (Michael Robertson) and are in line with industry good practice.

For drillholes KPU001 to KPU051, sample lengths were a nominal 1 m, but adjusted to smaller intervals to honour mineralization styles and lithological contacts. From hole KPU051 onwards, the nominal sample length was adjusted to 2 m for all zones with allowance for reduced sample lengths to honour mineralization styles and lithological contacts. Following sample mark-up, the drill cores were cut longitudinally in half using a diamond saw. Half core samples were collected continuously through the identified mineralized zones.

Sample preparation was completed by staff from KICO and its affiliated companies at its own internal containerised laboratories at Kolwezi and Kamoa (Figure 11-2 and Figure 11-3 respectively). Between June 1 and December 31, 2014, samples were prepared at the Kolwezi sample preparation laboratory by staff from the company's exploration division. After January 1, 2015, samples were prepared at Kamoa by staff from that project. The QP, Mr M Robertson inspected both sample preparation facilities on April 25, 2013. Representative subsamples were air freighted to the Bureau Veritas Minerals (BVM) laboratory in Perth, Australia for analysis.

Samples were dried at between 100°C and 105°C and crushed to a nominal 70% passing 2 mm, using either a TM Engineering manufactured Terminator jaw crusher or a Rocklabs Boyd jaw crusher. Subsamples (800 g to 1000 g) were collected by riffle splitting and milled to 90% passing 75 µm using Labtech Essa LM2 mills. Crushers and pulverisers were flushed with barren quartz material and cleaned with compressed air between each sample.

Grain size monitoring tests were conducted on samples labelled as duplicates, which comprise about 5% of total samples, and the results recorded. A total of 400 g of dry material was used for the crushing test, 10 g of dry material was used for the dry pulverized test, and 10 g of wet material was used for the wet pulverized test.

Subsamples collected for assaying and witness samples comprise the following:

- Three 40 g samples for DRC government agencies;
- A 140 g sample for assaying at BVM;
- A 40 g sample for portable XRF analyses; and
- A 90 g sample for office archives.

Figure 11-2

Containerised sample preparation facility at the Kolwezi laboratory

A Drying oven and sample racks

B Crusher and pulveriser

C Compressor and sample trays

D Coarse quartz blank material used for flushing between samples

Figure 11-3

Sample preparation facility at the Kamoa laboratory

A Drying oven

B Crusher and riffle splitter

C Crushers

D Labtech Essa LM2 pulverisers

E Dust filtration system

11.4 KICO Analytical Approach

The laboratory analytical approach and suite of elements to characterize the major and trace element geochemistry of the Big Zinc deposit for the underground drilling programme were informed by the results of an "orientation" exercise (Figure 11-4). This was carried out by taking 10 quarter core samples from different mineralization styles from Gécamines drillholes which intersected the Fault Zone and Big Zinc.

The orientation samples were submitted to both BVM and Intertek Genalysis in Perth, Australia for analysis by sodium peroxide fusion and ICP finish, ore grade and standard four acid digest and ICP finish, and gold by fire assay and AAS finish. The results of the orientation sampling exercise are described in Robertson (2013).

BVM was selected as the primary laboratory for the underground drilling programme. Representative pulverised subsamples from the underground drilling were submitted for the following elements and assay methods, based on the results of the orientation sampling:

- Zn, Cu and S assays by sodium peroxide fusion with an ICP-OES finish;
- Pb, Ag, As, Cd, Co, Ge, Re, Ni, Mo, V and U assays by peroxide fusion with an ICP-MS finish;
- Ag and Hg by aqua regia digest and ICP-MS finish; and
- Au, Pt and Pd by 10 g (due to inherent high sulphur content of the samples) lead collection fire assay with an ICP-OES finish.

For silver, aqua regia assays were used below approximately 50 ppm and sodium peroxide fusion assays were used above approximately 50 ppm.

BVM is accredited by The National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA) in Australia, to operate in accordance with ISO/IEC 17025 (Accreditation number: 15833).

Figure 11-4
Re-sampling of Gécamines core for assay orientation purposes

11.5 Quality Assurance and Quality Control

11.5.1 QAQC Approach

A comprehensive chain of custody and a quality assurance and quality control (QAQC) programme was maintained by KICO throughout the underground drilling campaign.

Input into the QAQC programme and SOP was provided by MSA. The QAQC programme was monitored by Dale Sketchley of Acuity Geoscience Ltd and reported on for the period May 1, 2014 to September 1, 2015 in Sketchley (2015a, b and c). The results presented below are largely sourced from these reports.

QAQC work comprised shipping of samples for preparation and assaying, liaising with sample preparation and assay laboratories, reviewing sample preparation and assay monitoring statistics, and ensuring non-compliant analytical results were addressed. The QAQC programme monitored:

- sample preparation screen test data,
- analytical data obtained from certified reference materials (CRM), blanks (BLK), and crushed duplicates (CRD), and
- internal laboratory pulverized replicates (LREP) for BVM.

Elements reviewed comprised Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Au, Ge, S, As, Cd, Co, Hg, Re, Ni, Mo, V, and U. Elements with incomplete data that are mostly below or near the reported lower detection limits are not discussed further; these comprise Ni, Mo, V, U, Pt, and Pd.

All KICO data from the project are stored in an MS Access database. QAQC data were exported from the Access database into software applications for creating monitoring charts and comparison charts. The number of samples reviewed by Sketchley (2015a) comprised 9,887 routine samples, 502 CRMs, 434 blank samples, 514 crushed duplicates and 812 laboratory duplicates.

All of the sample batches submitted to BVM had approximately 5% CRMs, 5% blanks and 5% crushed reject duplicates inserted into the sample stream.

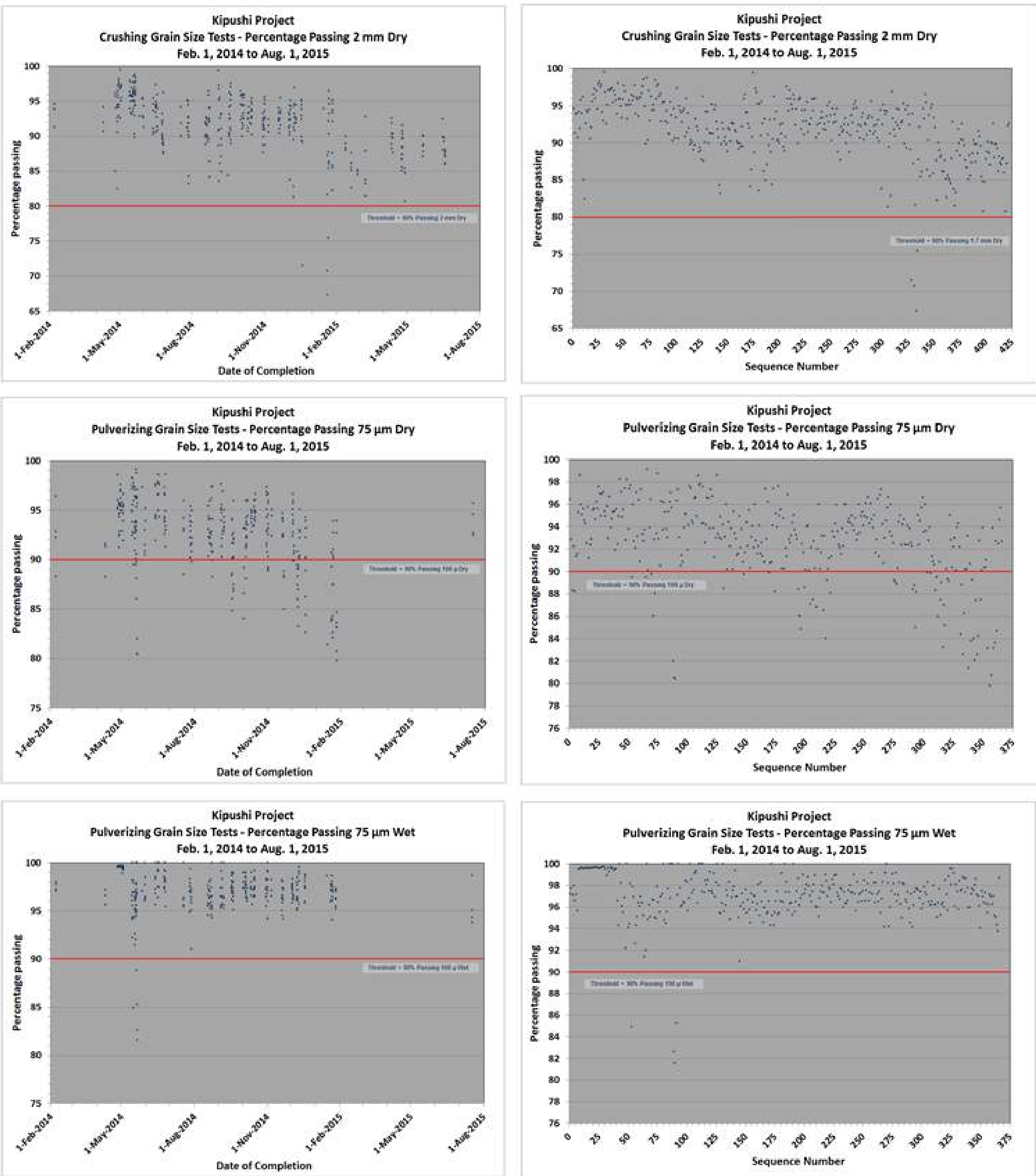
11.5.2 Laboratory Performance

11.5.2.1 **Sample Preparation**

Final statistical charts illustrating results from the Kolwezi and Kamoa sample preparation laboratories grain size monitoring are presented in Figure 11-6. The majority of samples pass 80% dry for the crushing step. For the pulverizing step, almost all samples pass 90% wet and the majority of samples pass 80% dry. The results are acceptable for styles of mineralization with low heterogeneity,

Figure 11-5

Crushing and pulverising grain size monitoring charts



Source: Sketchley (2015a)

11.5.2.2 <u>Certified Reference Materials</u>

CRMs were sourced from a number of independent commercial companies:

- Ore Research and Exploration (OREAS series) in Australia,
- Natural Resources Canada – Canadian Certified Reference Material Project (CCRMP series),
- African Mineral Standards (AMIS series), a division of Set Point Technology in South Africa,

- matrix-matched CRMs from Kipushi processed by CDN Resource Laboratories Ltd (KIP series).

The AMIS, CCRMP, and OREAS series were used up to early 2015, and the KIP series thereafter. As the KIP series of CRMs was introduced late in the drilling programme, the results are of limited applicability for the entire data set. The CRMs were used to monitor the accuracy of laboratory assay results. Certified mean values and tolerance limits derived from a multi-laboratory round robin program have been provided by the manufacturers and were used in the CRM monitoring charts. The CRMs used in the programme, together with the certified element concentrations, are listed in Table 11-1 and Table 11-2 respectively. These CRMs generally cover the observed grade ranges for Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, S, Ge, Au, As and Cd at Kipushi.

Analytical performance of the CRMs was monitored on an ongoing basis by KICO personnel using two to three standard deviation tolerance limits. Where CRM failures were identified, re-assays were requested on the failed CRM together with several adjacent routine samples. Re-assay results were assessed in the same manner. The results of the CRM programme for the main elements of economic interest are shown in Table 11-3.

Table 11-1
Commercial CRMs used in the KICO drilling programme

CRM	Commodity	Minerals	Source	Geological Setting	Location
AMIS 83	Zn, Pb, Cu, Ag	Sp, Gn + Zn-Pb Oxides	Kihabe - Nxuu Project	Neo-Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Botswana
AMIS 84	Zn, Pb, Cu, Ag	Sp, Gn + Zn-Pb Oxides	Kihabe - Nxuu Project	Neo-Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Botswana
AMIS 144	Zn, Cu	Zn Oxides	Skorpion Mine	Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Namibia
AMIS 147	Zn, Ag, Cu, Pb	Sp, Gn, Py, Cp	Rosh Pinah Mine	Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Namibia
AMIS 149	Zn, Ag, Cu, Pb	Sp, Gn, Py, Cp	Rosh Pinah Mine	Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Namibia
AMIS 153	Zn, Ag, Cu, Pb	Sp, Gn, Py, Cp	Rosh Pinah Mine	Proterozoic SEDEX deposit	Namibia
CZN4	Zn, Ag, Cu, Pb	Sp, Py, Po, Cp	Kidd Creek Mine	Archaean VMS deposit	Canada
Oreas 163	Cu	Cp, Py, Po	Mt. Isa Mine	Mid-Proterozoic dolomitic shale	Australia
Oreas 165	Cu	Cp, Py, Po	Mt. Isa Mine	Mid-Proterozoic dolomitic shale	Australia
Oreas 166	Cu	Cp, Py, Po	Mt. Isa Mine	Mid-Proterozoic dolomitic shale	Australia
Kip 1	Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Ge, Au	Sp, Cp, Py, Bn, Gn	Kipushi Mine	Proterozoic Central African Copperbelt	DRC
Kip 2	Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Ge, Au	Sp, Cp, Py, Bn, Gn	Kipushi Mine	Proterozoic Central African Copperbelt	DRC
Kip 3	Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Ge, Au	Sp, Cp, Py, Bn, Gn	Kipushi Mine	Proterozoic Central African Copperbelt	DRC
Kip 4	Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Ge, Au	Sp, Cp, Py, Bn, Gn	Kipushi Mine	Proterozoic Central African Copperbelt	DRC

Table 11-2
Certified concentrations by sodium peroxide fusion for CRMs used in the KICO drilling programme
(Note: AR = Aqua Regia; FA = Fire Assay)

CRM	Zn	Cu	Pb	Ag (AR)	Ag	Ge	Au (FA)	S	As	Cd	Co	Hg	Re
	%	%	%	ppm	ppm	ppm	ppb	%	ppm	ppm	ppm	ppm	ppm
AMIS 83													
AMIS 84								20.06					
AMIS 144													
AMIS 147	29.05		3.32		62.8		360			647			
AMIS 149													
AMIS 153	8.66		1.02	19.90			230	6.00					
CZN4	55.07				51.4			33.07		2604		4.54	
Oreas 163		1.71						9.98					
Oreas 165		10.20						8.28			2485		
Oreas 166		8.75		10.80				11.29			2077		
Kip 1	57.57			21.20		88.0	26	34.06	908	3254			
Kip 2	25.01				165.0	49.3	96	24.07	1401	1548			0.188
Kip 3		5.78		36.00				6.10	1431				0.875
Kip 4	5.00	5.24		22.20		11.5	51	17.00	2327				

Table 11-3
CRM performance for the main elements of economic interest

Element	Accuracy and Precision	Failures
Zn	Mean values within 2% of the certified values and RSD values <2%.	CZN4 and Amis 147 each had one positive failure. Re-assays addressed the CZN4 failure, whereas the one for AMIS 147 remains and is most likely due to a mix-up with a routine sample as the multi-element signature does not match any of the CRMs.
Cu	Mean values within 2% of the certified values and RSD values <2%.	Oreas 165 and 166 each had one failure, which was due to misclassification. The database was corrected to address the issue.
Pb	Mean values within 1% of the certified values and RSD values <3%.	AMIS 147 had 4 positive failures, and AMIS 153 had 3 positive failures. Three of the 4 failures for AMIS 147 and 2 of the 3 for AMIS 153 were re-assayed with surrounding samples, which addressed the failures. One positive failure for AMIS 147 remains and is most likely due to a mix-up with a routine sample as the multi-element signature does not match any of the CRMs. The sample data were removed from the statistical summary. One marginal positive failure for AMIS 153 remains, which has negligible impact.
Ag (AR)	Accuracy and precision for all CRMs is poor. Mean values are negatively biased up to 9%, and most RSD values are in the range 7-9%.	A number of failures (mostly negative) were observed. No failures were re-assayed due to the overall negative bias, which will also apply to the routine sample Ag values. Values above 50ppm are outside the acceptable range for the method, with the negative bias due to the partial digest of the method.

Ag (SFP)	Accuracy and precision for the AMIS and CZN CRMs is poor. AMIS 147 displays a negative bias of 6% and a RSD of 8%. CZN4 shows a negative bias of <2% and a RSD of 9%.	A number of negative failures remain for AMIS 147, with one likely due to a sample mix-up as the multi-element signature does not match any the CRMs. Re-assays returned values well below the range of the method for the surrounding routine samples; therefore the impact of the failures is regarded as negligible. CZN4 displays multiple negative failures due to poor resolution of the method.
Ge	Accuracy and precision for all 3 CRMs is poor.	KIP 1 displays no failures despite a strong negative bias of almost 11%, as a result of wide tolerance limits. The single KIP 2 result is a marginal negative failure. KIP 4 displays one positive failure and poor precision due to the low value.
Au (FA)	Accuracy and precision for all CRMs tends to be poor.	AMIS 147 displays 2 marginal positive failures and a negative failure likely due to sample mix-up. AMIS 153 displays a negative bias of 12% although no failures. The remaining CRMs have low gold values and the impact of failures is regarded as negligible.
S	Accuracy and precision for all CRMs is good with mean values within 2% of the certified values and RSD values <3%.	CZN4 has one marginal positive failure remaining, which has a minor impact. Oreas 165 and 166 each had one failure, which was due to misclassification. The database was corrected to address the issue.

CRM assays were reviewed using sequential monitoring charts for Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag, Ge, Au, S, Cd, Co, Hg and Re, annotated with the certified mean values, two and three standard deviations (2-3SD), and 5%-10% tolerance limits. AMIS 83, AMIS 144, and AMIS 149 were excluded from the QAQC review as they were used only once each.

CRM failures were defined as samples which returned assay results outside of the three standard deviation tolerance limits. In most cases, CRM failures were re-assayed together with several samples on either side, within the sample stream. In cases where CRM failures were not re-assayed, the adjacent routine samples were checked for elevated grades in order to assess the impact.

CRM performance was assessed for data above the following thresholds: Zn >1%, Cu >1%, Pb >1%, Ag (aqua regia) >11 ppm and <50 ppm, Ag (sodium peroxide fusion) >50 ppm, Ge >10 ppm, Au >25 ppb, all S, As >500 ppm, Cd >500 ppm, Co >500 ppm, Hg >0.1 ppm, and Re >0.1 ppm. These thresholds were used to eliminate lower value data well below economic cut-off grades and closer to the lower detection limits where analytical performance is typically poor, especially for the sodium peroxide fusion method.

11.5.2.3 **Blanks**

Locally obtained barren coarse quartz vein material was used to monitor contamination and sample mix-ups (Figure 11-2). This material was previously analysed in separate programmes (both Kipushi re-sampling and Kamoa programmes) to ensure that it was barren of the elements of interest. Analytical performance of blank samples was evaluated on an ongoing basis by Kipushi project personnel using threshold limits. Where failures over thresholds were identified, the blank and a group of adjacent samples were submitted for re-assaying of the failed elements. Re-assays were evaluated in the same manner.

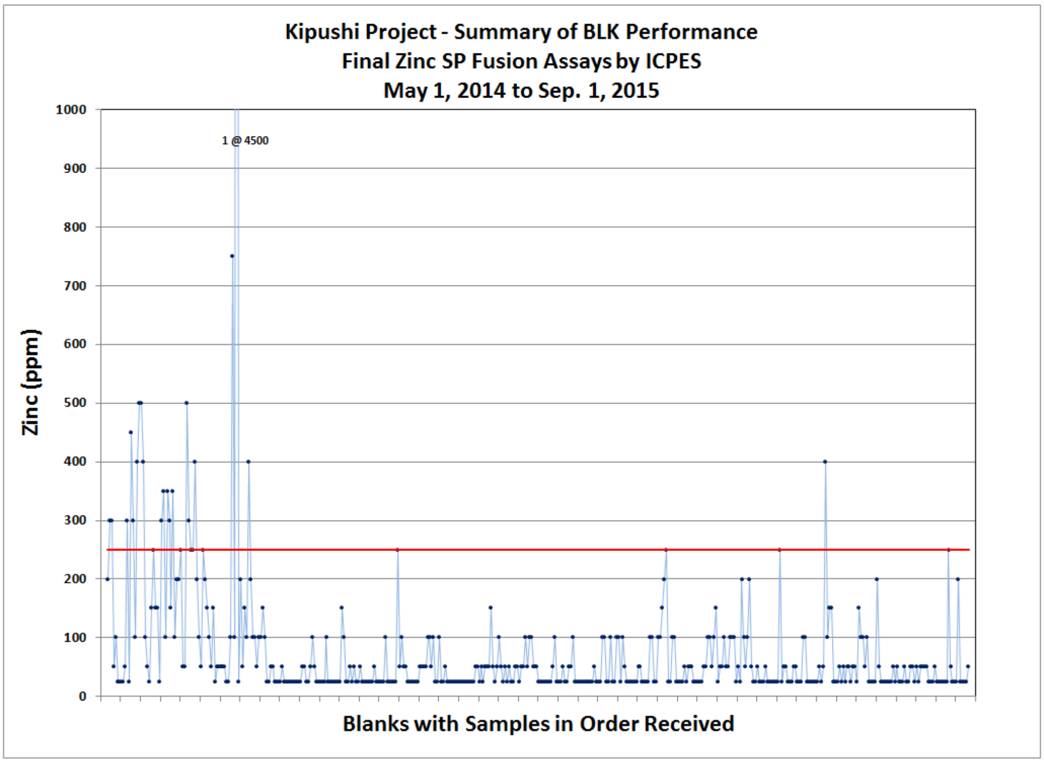
Blank sample assays were monitored using sequential control charts for Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag (aqua regia), Ag (peroxide fusion), Ge, Au, S, As, Cd, Hg and Re and annotated with threshold limits.

Blank sample monitoring results for zinc by sodium peroxide fusion are shown in Figure 11-6. A large number of failures are observed at the beginning of the programme. These are related to a combination of four causes: sample bags damaged in shipment to BVM; cleaning material submitted for assaying instead of actual blank material; carry-over from extremely high grade samples; and zinc in pulverising bowl material. The first two were rectified, leaving the remaining failures related to carry-over from preceding samples and pulverising bowl material. Most of the failures are in the range of several hundred ppm and are well below economic cut-off values; however, one failure is quite high at 4,450 ppm, and it was re-assayed together with surrounding samples in the sequence. The re-assays confirmed the higher value, which is most likely related to the carry-over from the preceding higher grade sample. As the single sample is well below economic cut-off grade, it would have a negligible impact on any estimate.

The remaining elements have a small number of individual failures that are mostly lower values, except for one sample for gold at 835 ppb. The sample with high gold was repeated three times by BVM and returned between 663 ppb and 2000 ppb. The anomalous values may be related to spurious gold within the quartz vein material.

Figure 11-6

Blank sample performance for zinc by sodium peroxide fusion



Source: Sketchley (2015a)

11.5.2.4 <u>Duplicates</u>

Crushed duplicate samples were obtained by riffle splitting of 2 mm crushed samples and were inserted into the sample stream to monitor the precision of the combined crushing and pulverizing stages of sample preparation as well as the analytical stage. Most of the observed differences in duplicate pairs can generally be attributed to splitting at the crushing stage.

Pulverized duplicates were routinely done by BVM during assaying and were used to monitor the combined precision of the pulverizing stage of sample preparation and the analytical stage.

Bias was evaluated using Scatter, Quantile, and Relative Difference plots, with precision guidelines at ±10%, 20% and 30%. Patterns for most elements are symmetrical about parity, thereby suggesting no biases in the sample preparation and assaying process. Reduced major axis (RMA) equations indicate biases are less than 1% for most elements. Exceptions are silver (Aqua Regia), silver (peroxide fusion), gold, and rhenium. Silver (Aqua Regia) has an increase in scatter above 50 ppm, which is the upper limit of the method. The bias decreases to near 1% when data above this threshold are excluded, although the original samples tend to have a slight negative bias. Silver (peroxide fusion) has an increase in scatter for data above 125 ppm. The bias decreases to near 1% when data above this threshold are excluded. Both gold and rhenium have a greater degree of scatter for all grades and noticeable differences in values for several sample pairs where the duplicate is significantly lower than the original. The bias decreases to near 1% when these data are excluded.

Precision was evaluated using Absolute Relative Difference by grade, Absolute Relative Difference by percentile and Thompson Howarth plots. Precision levels using global Absolute Relative Difference by grade for crushed duplicates are 4-13% for all elements except gold and rhenium, which are 42% and 23% respectively. Differences for pulverised duplicates are 4-12% for all elements except gold and rhenium, which are 34% and 19% respectively.

Precision levels using Absolute Relative Difference by Percentile were compared to maximum ideal differences at the 90th percentile of 20% for crushed duplicates (CRDs) and 10% for laboratory repeats (LREPs). Copper, silver (Aqua Regia), germanium, sulphur, cadmium and cobalt all have absolute relative differences at or less than the maximum ideal thresholds of 20% for CRDs and 10% for LREPs. Larger differences for zinc, lead, arsenic and mercury are related to large numbers of lower value data with poor repeatability. When the data below five to ten times the lower detection limit are excluded, the differences decrease to less than 20% for CRDs and 10% for LREPS. Larger differences for silver (peroxide fusion), gold and rhenium are related to a greater degree of scatter for all grades.

Precision using the Thompson Howarth method was evaluated utilising the level of Asymptotic Precision and the Practical Detection Limit. Asymptotic Precision is defined as the level of variability at values well above the lower detection limit. Practical detection limit is the grade where the level of precision equals 100% and indicates data are completely random below this threshold. As a general guideline, depending on actual heterogeneity, the asymptotic precision should be better than 10% to 20% for crushed duplicates, and better than 5% to 10% for pulverized duplicates.

Asymptotic precision values for CRDs and LREPs are 10% or below for all elements, except gold and rhenium, which have a level of 19% for CRDs and 13-22% for LREPs. All elements tend to have better precision for pulverised duplicates than crushed duplicates, as expected. Similarly, the practical detection limit for pulverized duplicates tends to be better than for crushed duplicates and higher than the actual instrumental lower detection limits.

11.5.2.5 Second Laboratory Check Assay Programme

An initial check assay programme was undertaken on a set of representative samples from drillholes KPU001 – KPU025, in order to confirm the assays from the primary laboratory BVM. This work is reported on in Sketchley (2015b). A subsequent check assay programme was carried out on samples from drillholes KPU026 to KPU072 and reported in Sketchley (2015c).

The check samples were selected on a random basis, representing 10% of the total sample population after excluding all samples that reported less than 0.1% Zn and 0.1% Cu. The selection was supplemented by additional samples that reported higher Ge, Re and mixed Zn/Cu, in order to round out the grade profile for the final set of samples for check assaying.

Sample material was sourced from archived pulps (i.e. not the reject pulps from the BVM assays) prepared and stored at the Kolwezi sample preparation facility. The sample batch submission also contained an appropriate quantity of CRMs, pulp blanks and duplicates. CRMs that were routinely used for the project submissions to BVM were used for quality control in the check assay batches. Duplicate check sample batches were submitted to the Intertek Genalysis (Intertek) and SGS laboratories in Perth. Analytical methods were matched as closely as possible to those used by the primary laboratory, BVM.

The quality of the check assay results was assessed using sequential CRM and blank sample monitoring charts and scatterplots for duplicate pairs. Failures were subjected to re-assay including several samples from the sequence on either side of the failed assay.

In the initial check assay programme, failures for higher grade Zn, Cu, Pb, Ag and S CRMs assayed by SGS were more frequent than for Intertek. The Intertek results show a slight overall negative bias for most elements, whereas SGS results show a slight overall positive bias for most elements. Although both laboratories validated the original assays conducted by BVM, the Intertek results were more stable than SGS, with fewer issues, and Intertek was selected for all subsequent check assay work.

Intertek generally performed well based on the Kipushi matrix-matched CRMs used in the latter part of the programme. CRM failures are generally related to lower values well below economic cut-offs.

11.5.3 Conclusions

The QAQC protocol implemented by KICO concluded the following:

- The results of the QAQC programme demonstrate that the quality of the assay data for zinc, copper and lead is acceptable for supporting the estimation of Mineral Resources. Higher grade assays for silver, germanium and gold are useable, but the limitations in the quality of the data should be taken into account.

- The second laboratory check assay programme conducted by Intertek validated the original BVM assays for most elements. Any future checking work should continue to use the Intertek laboratory; however, issues with carry-over need to be re-emphasized.
- Sample material for the second laboratory check assay programme was sourced from archived pulps (i.e. not the same pulps assayed by BVM) stored at the Kolwezi sample preparation facility. Future check assays should be conducted on the assay pulp residues remaining from the BVM assays.
- Gécamines did not carry out routine check assaying. Check assays were only carried out when visual grade estimates did not correspond with the laboratory results. Gécamines protocol for internal check sampling is unknown and there was no check assaying or sampling by an independent external laboratory.
- No data are available for QAQC routines implemented for the Gécamines samples and therefore the Gécamines sample assays should be considered less reliable than the KICO sample assays.

11.6 Security of Samples

Historically the sample chain of custody is expected to have been good as the samples did not leave the site and were assayed at the Gécamines laboratory at Kipushi. The split mineralized core material was retained on site in a core storage building. The rejects and pulps were also stored, but over the years many were destroyed or lost.

KICO maintains a comprehensive chain of custody program for its drill core samples from Kipushi. All diamond drill core samples are processed at either the company's Kolwezi facility, or at the Kamoa Project facility. Core samples are delivered from Kipushi to the sample preparation facility by company vehicle. On arrival at the sample preparation facility, samples are checked, and the sample dispatch forms signed. Prepared samples are shipped to the analytical laboratory in sealed sacks that are accompanied by appropriate paperwork, including the original sample preparation request numbers and chain-of-custody forms.

Paper records are kept for all assay and QAQC data, geological logging and specific gravity information, and down-hole and collar coordinate surveys.

12 DATA VERIFICATION

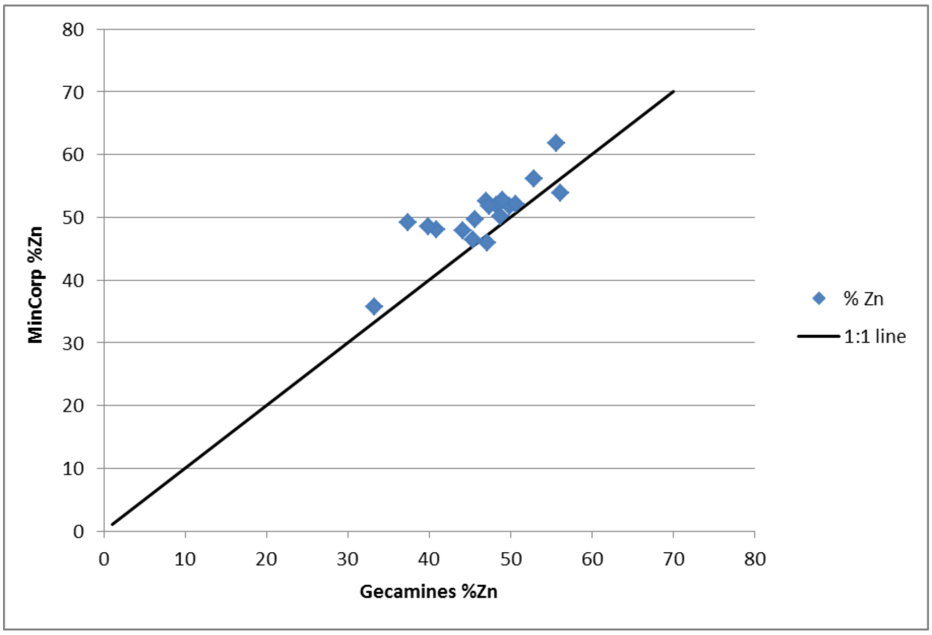
A comprehensive re-sampling programme was undertaken on historical Gécamines drillhole core from the Big Zinc and Fault Zone below 1,270 metre-level at the Kipushi Mine. The objective of the exercise was to verify historical assay results and to assess confidence in the historical assay database for its use in Mineral Resource estimation.

In addition, KICO completed a number of twin holes on the Big Zinc between March 2014 and May 2015 with the objective of verifying historical Gécamines results.

12.1 Previous re-sampling programme (Mineral Corporation)

A limited re-sampling exercise was carried out by The Mineral Corporation that collected twenty 2 m samples from 14 holes that intersected the Big Zinc. These were analysed by Golden Pond Tr 67 (Pty) Ltd in Johannesburg using a "full acid digest" and ICP finish. With the exception of two samples, all reported slightly higher results compared to the original Gécamines data (Figure 12-1). On the basis of this small population it was found that the Gécamines results under-report zinc by approximately 8% compared to the check assays.

Figure 12-1
Comparison between Gécamines and Mineral Corporation zinc assays on the same sample intervals



12.2 Big Zinc and Fault Zone Re-sampling Programme

12.2.1 Sample Selection

An initial site visit to Kipushi was undertaken from February 20 to February 22, 2013 by the QP, Mr Robertson, in order to view the condition of the existing Gécamines drillhole cores from holes collared on the 1,270 metre-level, as well as to review existing hard copy plans, sections, drillhole logs and assay results. The Gécamines laboratory at Kipushi was inspected and the staff were interviewed in order to establish the procedures used in the original preparation and analysis of the Kipushi core samples.

The availability of holes for the re-sampling campaign was constrained by the following factors:

- Cores are preserved from only 49 out of 60 holes,
- Limited re-sampling of 14 of the 49 holes was carried out by The Mineral Corporation resulting in only ¼ core remaining in places,
- Core recovery issues in some holes,
- Some holes only have composite assay data results and individual sample assays are not available or have not been captured.

Holes were selected to cover the various mineralization styles and intervening low grade "sterile" zones (where core is preserved) and to cover the extent of the deposit. One hole was selected from each of the eight sections in order to cover the strike extent of the Big Zinc and to allow for re-sampling of the Fault Zone where possible. The selected drillhole inclinations range from -25˚ to - 75˚ to cover the dip extent of the mineralization. The selected holes are listed in Table 12-1. These holes comprise 161 original sample intervals which represent approximately 16% of the historical sample database for the Big Zinc.

Re-sampling of the core was supervised by the MSA QP in a follow-up site visit from April 22 to April 24, 2013. Re-sampling was carried out using an average sample length of 1.9 m, compared to the original average sample length of 3.8 m (while honouring the original sample boundaries), in order to obtain better resolution on grade distribution. Direct comparison with the original sample lengths was subsequently carried out on a length weighted average grade basis.

Table 12-1
Holes Selected for Re-sampling

Level	Section	Resampling by MinCorp	Selected Hole	No. Original Samples	Comment
1270	3	-55; -75	-75	31	Medium Cu zone in Fault Orebody; wide intersection though Big Zinc, although not true thickness
1270	5	-55; -65; -75	-30	22	Intersects upper part of Big Zinc, exhibits lower grades. Two high Cu zones in Fault Orebody. Individual assays available and need to be captured.
1270	7	-55; -75	-25	21	Thick high Cu zone in Fault Orebody; intersects upper part of Big Zinc
1270	9	-40; -75	-40	25	Medium Cu zone on Fault Orebody; intersects entire middle zone of Big Zinc; (-85 hole core not available therefore not an option)

1270	11	-45; -65	-25	15	Intersects upper part of Big Zinc; includes narrow zones of high Cu
1270	13	-65	-75	19	Narrow zones of high Cu; intersects lower part of Big Zinc
1270	15	-20	-40	12	High Cu in Fault Orebody; intersects middle zone of Big Zinc
1270	17	-70	-75*	16	Intersects lower part of Big Zinc

** Core trays labelled -70*

12.2.2 Sample Preparation and Assay

A total of 384 quarter core samples (NQ size core) were collected and submitted to the Ivanhoe affiliated containerised sample preparation laboratory in Kolwezi for sample preparation. This facility and the sample preparation procedures were inspected by the QP on April 24, 2013 and found to be suitable for preparation of the Kipushi samples.

A total of 457 samples including quality control (QC) samples were submitted to the BVM laboratory in Perth, Australia for analysis by a combination of methods as shown in Table 12-2. Density determinations on every tenth sample were carried out at BVM using the gas pycnometry method.

Check (second laboratory) analyses of Zn, Cu, Pb, Ge and Ag were carried out at the Perth-based Intertek Genalysis laboratories using the same assay methodology apart from Ag which was determined by four-acid digest and ICP MS finish.

Table 12-2
Assay Methodology Approach

Method and Code	Elements
Fire Assay - ICP-AES finish (Doc 600)	Au, Pt, Pd
Sodium Peroxide fusion with ICP-AES finish (Doc 300)	Ag, As, Cu, Fe, Pb, S, Zn
Sodium Peroxide fusion with ICP-MS finish (Doc 300)	Ag, As, Ba, Be, Bi, Cd, Ce, Cs, Co, Cu, Dy, Er, Eu, Ga, Gd, Ge, Hf, Ho, In, La, Li, Lu, Mo, Nb, Nd, Ni, Pb, Pr, Rb, Re, Sc, Sm, Sn, Sr, Ta, Tb, Th, Tl, Tm, U, W, Y, Yb, Zr,
Mini Aqua Regia digest with ICP-MS finish (Doc 403)	Hg

12.2.3 Assay Results and QAQC

Quality control samples inserted into the sample stream comprised 16 coarse silica blanks, 18 coarse crush field duplicates and 40 standard samples from 15 certified reference materials (CRMs). The CRMs were selected to cover the grade range for Zn (0.30 – 55.24% Zn) and are certified for a variety of Cu, Pb, S, Ag, Fe, As, Cd and Co.

CRM over-reporting failures for Zn and S were observed in the initial BVM assays, which led to a re-assay of Zn and S for all 457 samples. The over-reporting was confirmed by the results of 128 pulp splits analysed at a second laboratory (Intertek Genalysis in Perth). Although an improvement in the accuracy of results was noted in the re-assays, CRM failures for Zn and S were still observed and this was brought to the attention of BVM who re-analysed 120 samples for Zn and S using a modified approach. These results were regarded by the QP as acceptable. BVM was then requested to re-analyse all 457 samples for Zn and S in order to provide a "clean" set of data. These final re-assays, together with the other multi-element results, which were accepted from the initial BVM work, comprise the final assay dataset for the re-sampling programme. A comparison of mineralized intersections, at a cut-off of 7% Zn, between historical and re-sampling results is shown in Table 12-3. The comparison revealed an under-reporting by Gécamines for grades above 25% Zn, and over-reporting at grades less than 20% Zn (Figure 12-2). Several outlier pairs were observed that are likely to result from mixed core or discrepancies in depth intervals. This can be expected considering that the original drilling, sampling and assaying took place some 20 years ago. If the obvious outliers are excluded, the BVM results are on average 5.5% higher than the Gécamines results. A general under-reporting by Gécamines was also concluded from earlier re-sampling of 20 sample intervals by Mineral Corporation.

The observed discrepancies may be in part be due to a difference in analytical approach, with the original assays having been carried out by Gécamines at the Kipushi laboratory by a four-acid digest and AAS finish, for Cu, Co, Zn and Fe rather than the sodium peroxide fusion used by BVM.

Results for the other elements of interest are as follows:

- Several outlier pairs are observed in the copper results that are likely to result from mixed core or discrepancies in depth intervals. Apart from the obvious outliers, a general correlation is observed between Gécamines and BVM that is considered acceptable, given the nuggety style of copper mineralization.
- Disregarding the few outliers, BVM slightly under-reports lead compared to Gécamines.
- Sulphur displays a similar pattern to zinc, with slight over-reporting at higher grades and under-reporting at lower grades by BVM compared to Gécamines.
- Gold was not routinely reported in historical assays, but was reported as part of the re-sampling programme. Grades are typically low with a maximum of 0.21 ppm gold reported.
- Germanium results are in line with historically reported results, although these were not reported routinely by Gécamines. The BVM germanium results are shown as a histogram plot in Figure 12-3.

Table 12-3

Comparison of mineralized intersections between Gécamines and the re-sampling programme using a cut-off of 7% Zn

	Gécamines data						Re-Sampling programme					
Hole_ID	From	To	Interval[2]	Zn %	Cu %	Calculated Density	From	To	Interval[2]	Zn %	Cu %	Density[3]
1270/3/V+30/-75/SE[1]	99.00	219.30	120.30	36.11	0.69	3.50	124.80	303.70	178.90	48.01	0.28	4.09
1270/5/V+30/-30/SE	63.60	117.80	54.20	41.40	1.86	3.65	65.60	117.80	52.20	41.77	2.03	3.65
1270/5/V+30/-30/SE	142.50	155.60	13.10	18.74	0.97	3.21	153.75	155.60	13.10	20.76	0.45	3.75
1270/7/V+30/-25/SE	73.30	116.30	43.00	35.49	4.11	3.69	73.30	114.20	40.90	35.87	4.22	No data
1270/7/V+30/-25/SE	129.60	149.80	20.20	49.13	0.10	3.70	129.60	154.00	24.40	43.21	0.26	No data
1270/9/V+30/-40/SE	81.30	161.60	80.30	39.61	0.30	3.55	81.30	161.60	80.30	45.41	0.28	3.96
1270/11/V+30/-25/SE	72.50	123.50	51.00	21.78	1.16	3.27	82.90	123.50	40.60	20.28	0.42	3.44
1270/13/V+45/-75/SE	147.10	190.30	43.20	22.51	1.05	3.37	160.90	190.30	29.40	33.87	0.20	4.01
1270/15/W/-40/SE	90.10	98.20	8.10	29.03	0.48	3.44	90.10	98.20	8.10	29.03	0.45	3.99
1270/15/W/-40/SE	121.20	133.70	12.50	31.46	1.34	3.53	113.80	133.70	19.90	24.47	0.68	3.42
1270/17/W/-75/SE	127.80	135.10	7.30	16.78	0.16	3.16	127.80	135.10	7.30	12.78	0.10	3.37
1270/17/W/-75/SE	186.80	231.00	44.20	40.42	0.20	3.69	186.80	231.00	44.20	41.58	0.20	4.03

Note:

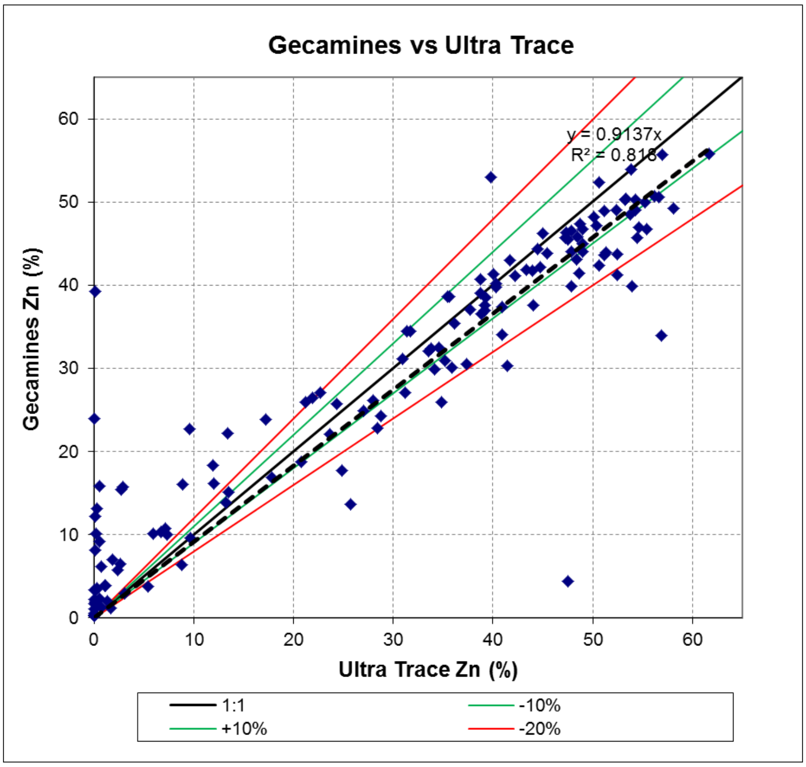
[1] Assay data missing from 219.30 - 303.70m

[2] Drilled intersections - not true thickness

[3] Density by Archimedes method

Figure 12-2

Scatterplot and Q-Q plot showing Gécamines versus BVM results for Zn



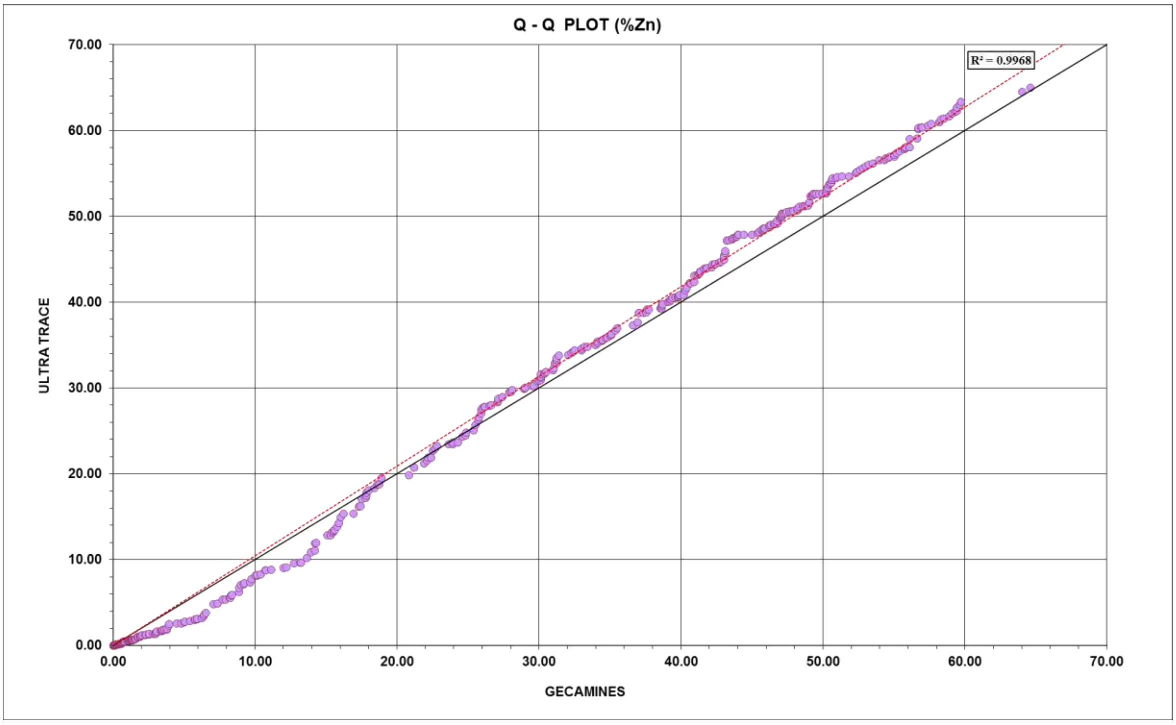
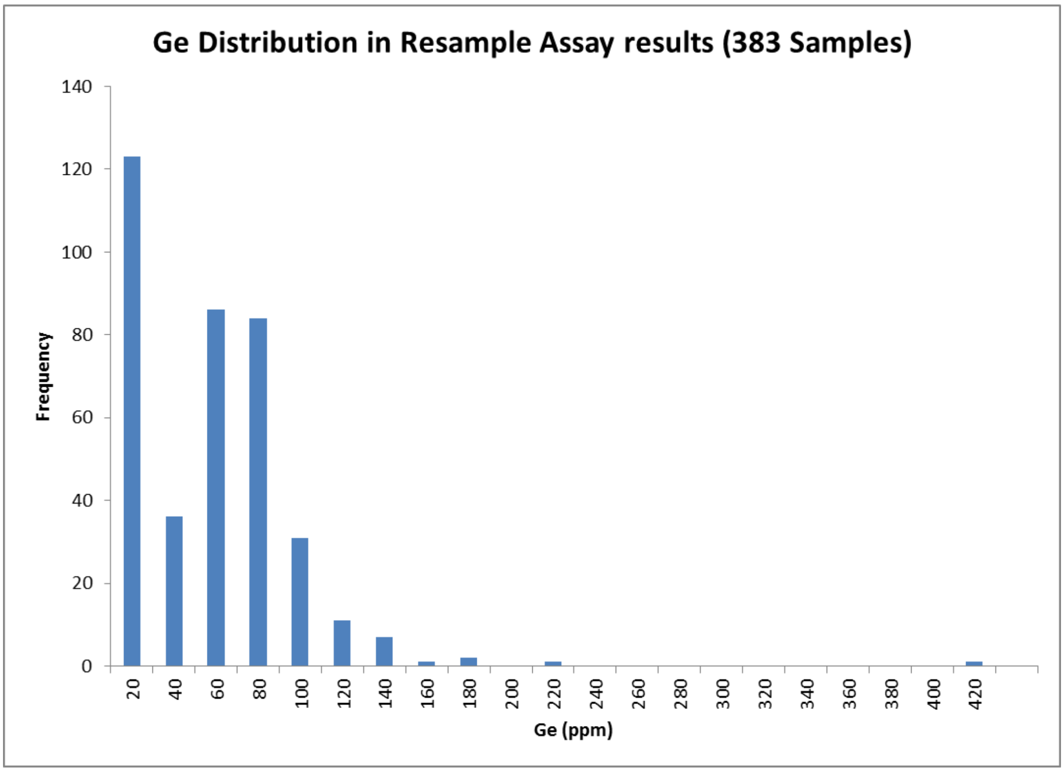


Figure 12-3
Histogram plot of BVM Ge results



12.2.4 Density Considerations

Density determinations were carried out by gas pycnometry on every tenth sample at BVM resulting in a data set of 40 readings. In addition, density determinations using the Archimedes method were carried out on a representative piece of 15 cm core for each sample during the 2013 re-logging campaign.

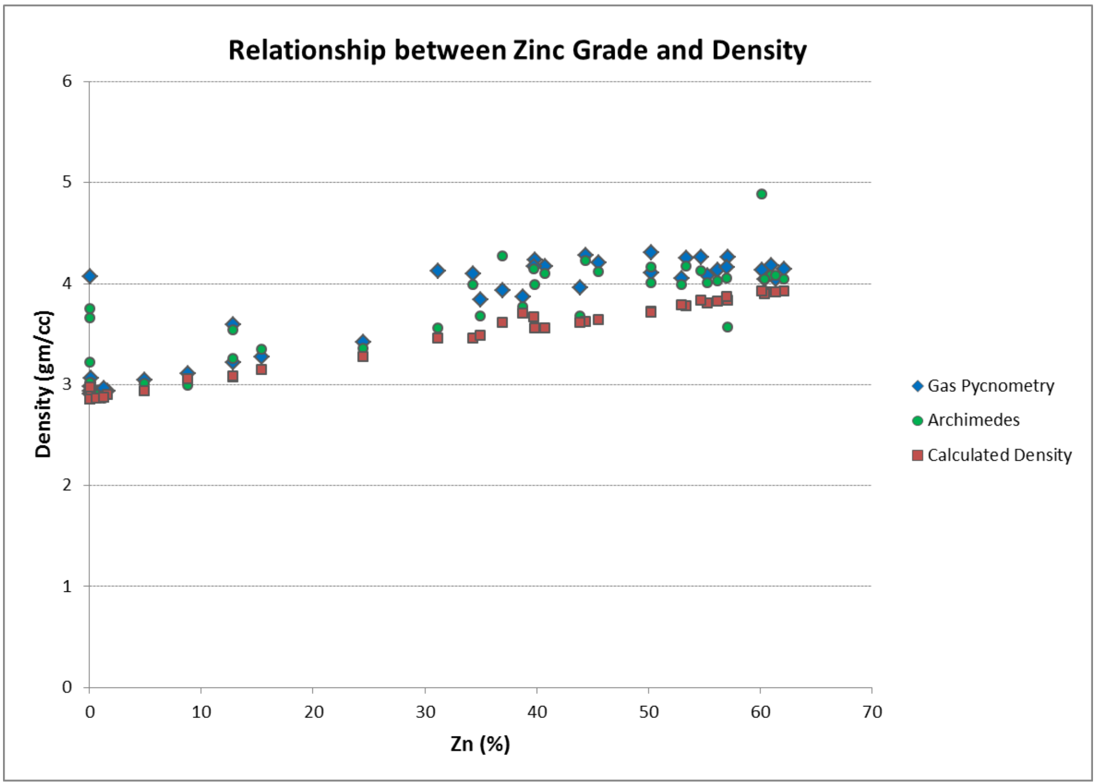
Gécamines used the following formula, derived mainly for the Fault Zone, to calculate density for use in its tonnage estimates:

Density = 2.85 + 0.039 (%Cu) + 0.0252 (%Pb) + 0.0171 (%Zn).

A comparison between density results based on the Gécamines formula, laboratory gas pycnometry method and the water immersion (Archimedes) method versus zinc grade for the same samples is shown in Figure 12-4. It is apparent that density, and hence tonnage, is understated by an average of 9% using the Gécamines calculated approach.

The IMC Technical Report dated August 1, 2003 regarded the Gécamines density estimation factor as reasonable (Wells *et al.*, 2003). Later work by IMC (Kelly *et al.*, 2012) considered that the Gécamines density estimation factor is approximate and may be inappropriate for the estimation of zinc in high grade iron-poor sphalerite such as occurs in the Big Zinc zone. Gécamines did not apply a density factor for pyrite and this may have resulted in under-estimating the density of low iron zinc rich mineralization, particularly in association with significant quantities of pyrite.

Figure 12-4
Relationship between Zn grade and density calculated using the Gécamines formula versus BVM laboratory determinations by gas pycnometry and Archimedes method determinations



12.3 Re-logging Programme

KICO geologists undertook remarking and re-logging of all the available Gécamines drillholes that intersected the Big Zinc, using standardised logging codes which were also used in the KICO underground drilling programme.

12.4 Twin Hole Drilling Programme

Eleven Gécamines holes were twinned during the KICO underground drilling programme. The twin hole pairs are listed in Table 12-4, and examples of strip log comparisons between twin hole pairs are shown in Figure 12-5 to Figure 12-10.

In certain holes (e.g. 1270/7/V+30/-75/SE), Gécamines sampling stopped in mineralization and complete sampling of the KICO twin holes allowed for determining the limits of mineralization (Figure 12-9).

The KICO drillholes were more completely sampled in lower grade mineralization compared to the Gécamines holes as approximate visual cut-offs of 7% Zn and 1% Cu were used to guide the Gécamines sampling.

Sampling by KICO was initially carried out on a 1 m nominal length and later increased to 2 m, with sample length also constrained by lithology and mineralization. More detail and grade resolution in therefore observed in the KICO sampling compared to Gécamines sampling where sample lengths were based on homogenous zones of mineralization ranging from less than 1 m to greater than 10 m in length with an average sample length of 3.44 m.

In general, the zinc, copper and lead values compared well overall between the twin holes and the original holes.

Table 12-4
Kipushi twinned holes

Gécamines drillhole	Twinned with KICO drillhole
1270/5/V+30/-45/SE	KPU046
1270/5/V+30/-65/SE	KPU064
1270/11/V+30/-65/SE	KPU062
1270/5/V+30/-55/SE	KPU059
1270/17/W/-35/SE	KPU070
1270/17/W/-76/SE	KPU069
1270/5/V+30/-75/SE	KPU057 & KPU051
1270/15/W/-20/SE	KPU068
1270/7/V+30/-75/SE	KPU051
1270/9/V+30/-63/SE	KPU071
1270/13/V+45/-30/SE	KPU065

Figure 12-5

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/5/V+30/-65/SE and KICO twin hole KPU064

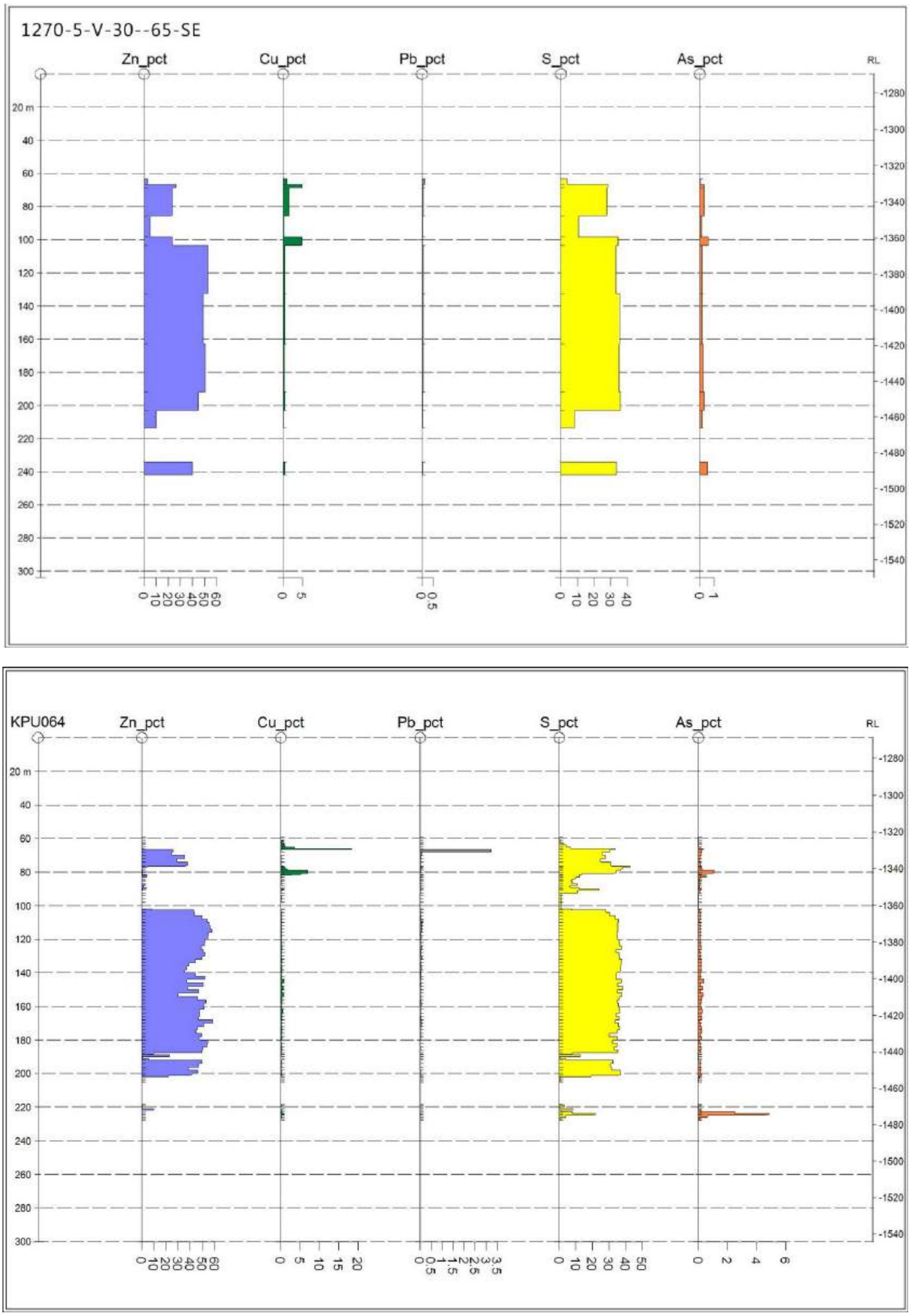
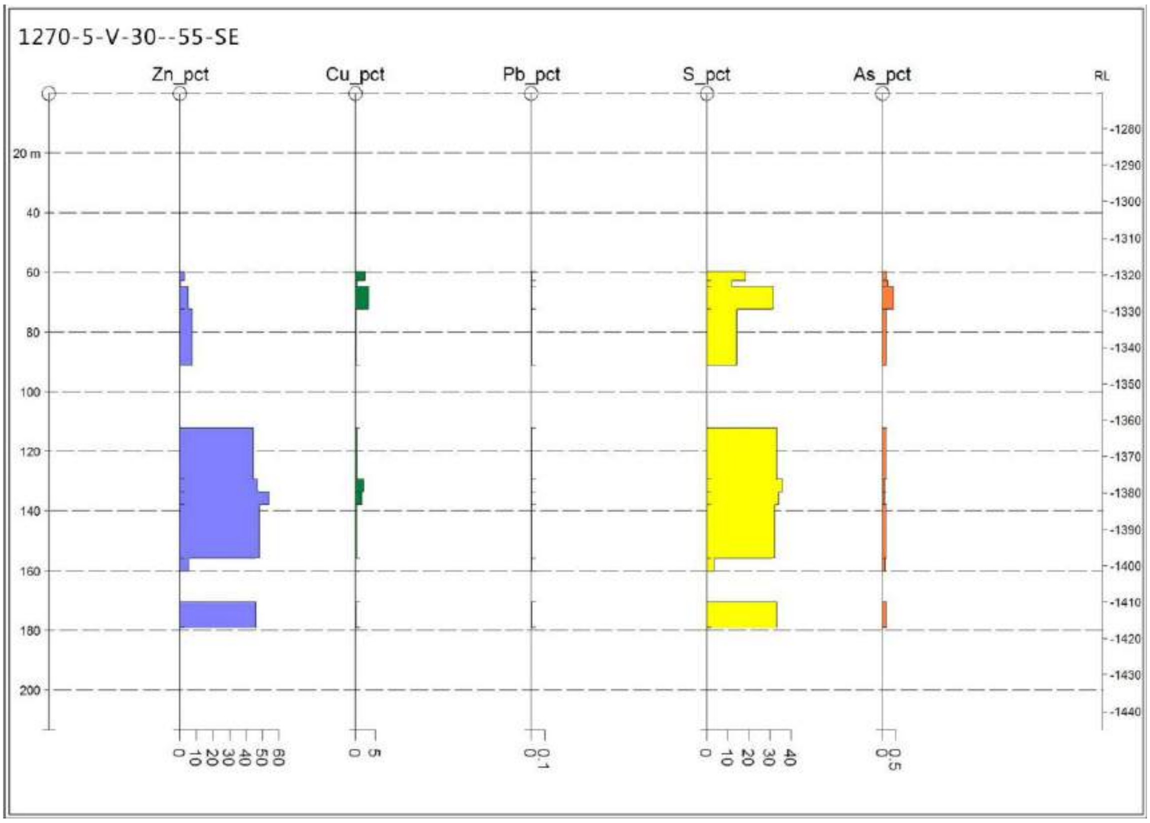


Figure 12-6

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/5/V+30/-55/SE and KICO twin hole KPU059



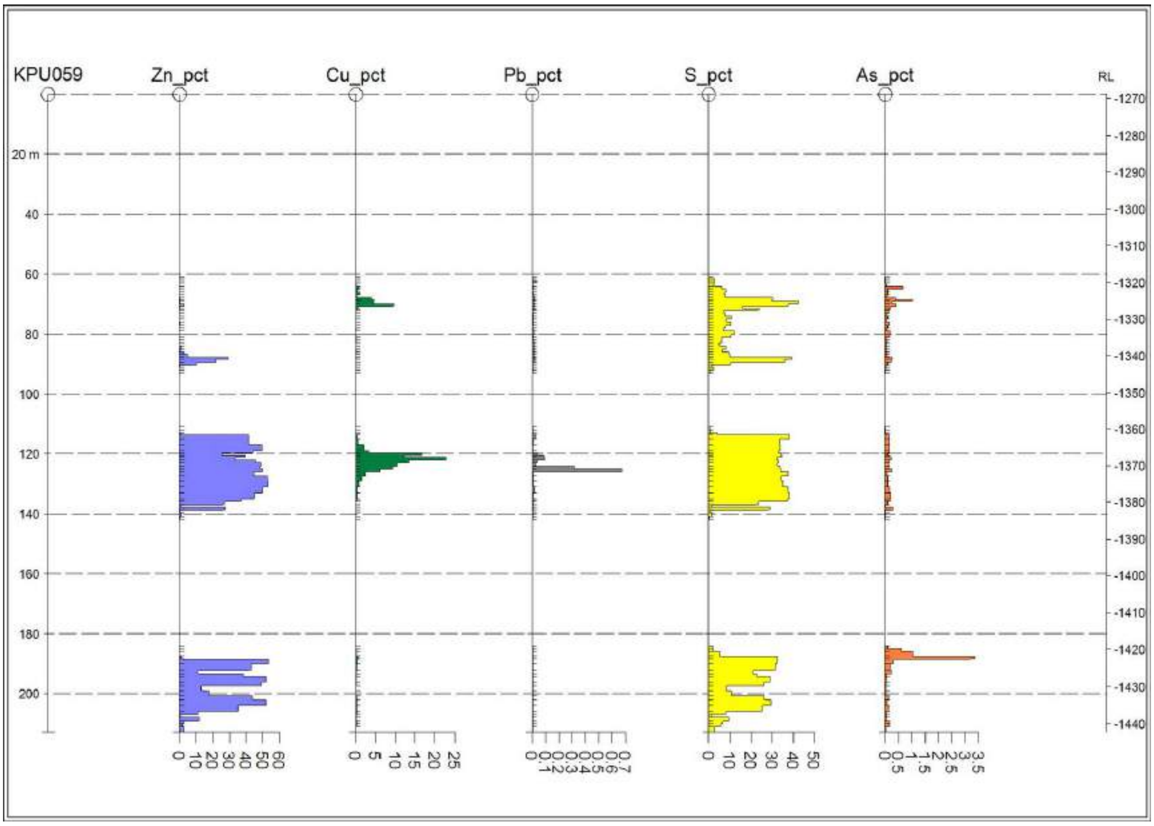


Figure 12-7

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/17/W/-76/SE and KICO twin hole KPU069

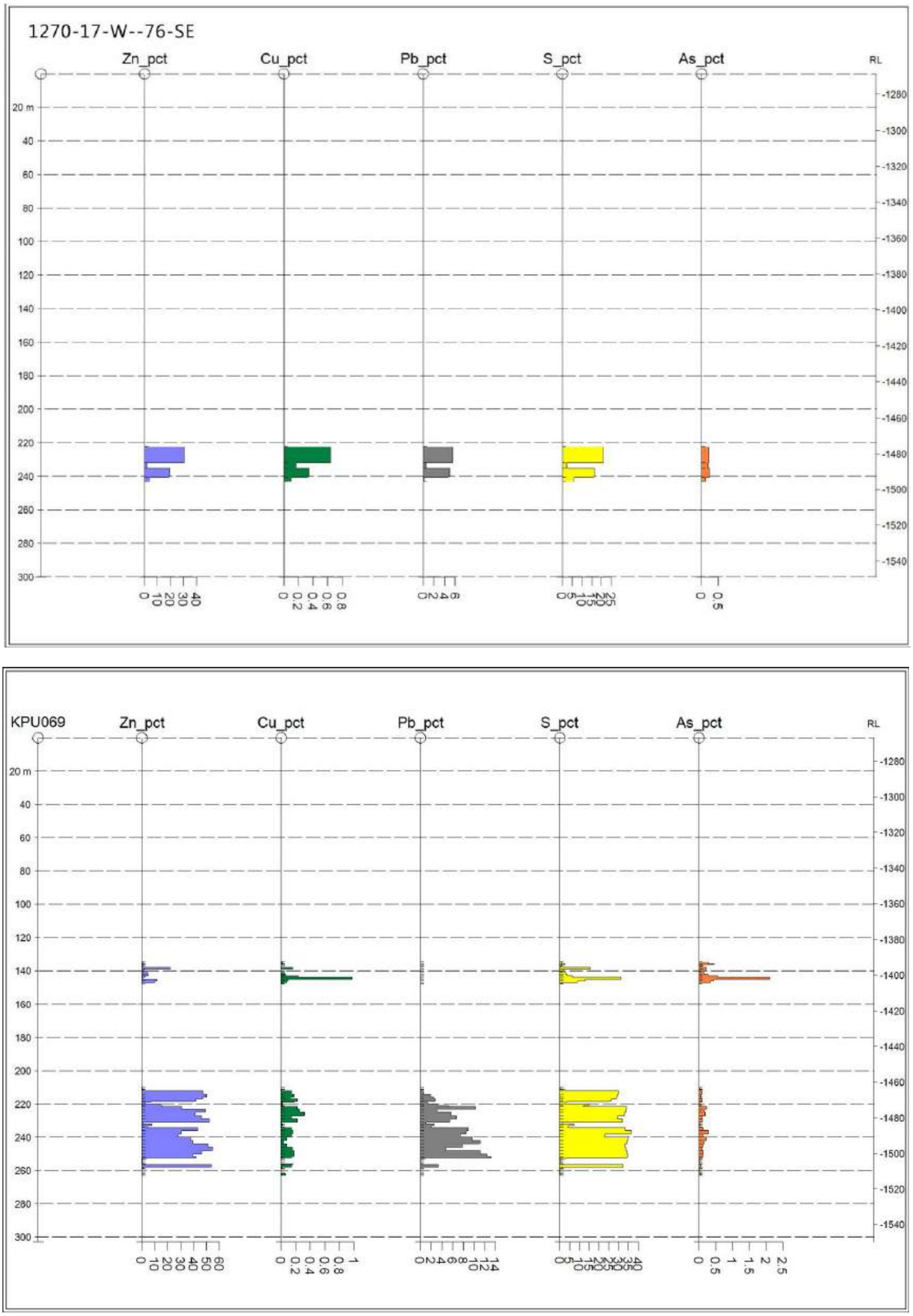
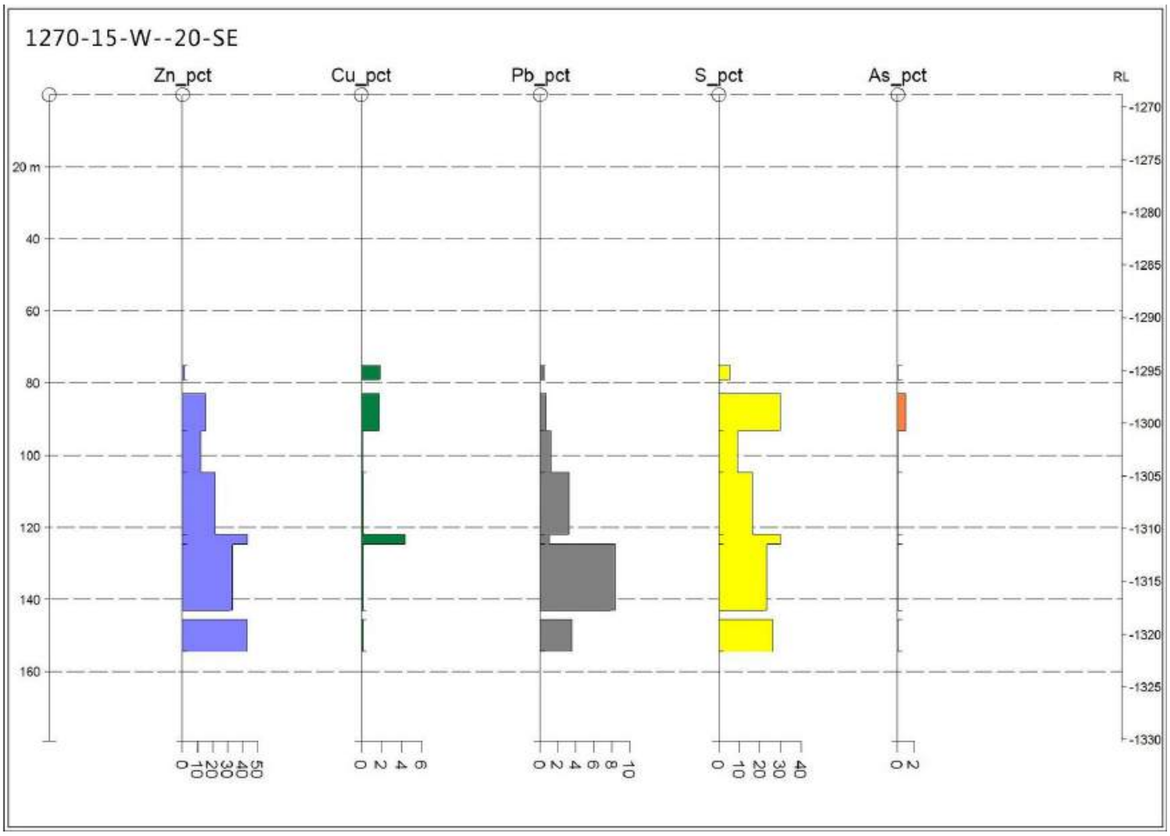


Figure 12-8

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/15/W/-20/SE and KICO twin hole KPU068



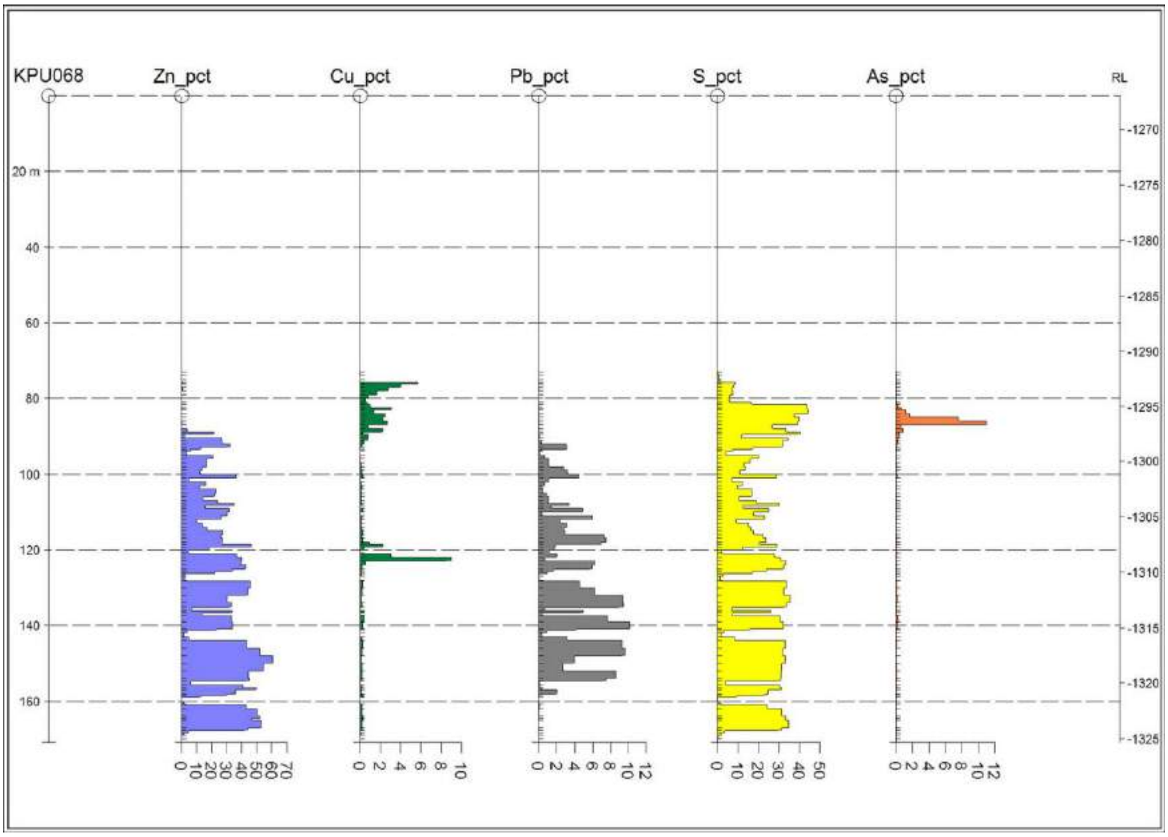


Figure 12-9

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/7/V+30/-75/SE and KICO twin hole KPU051

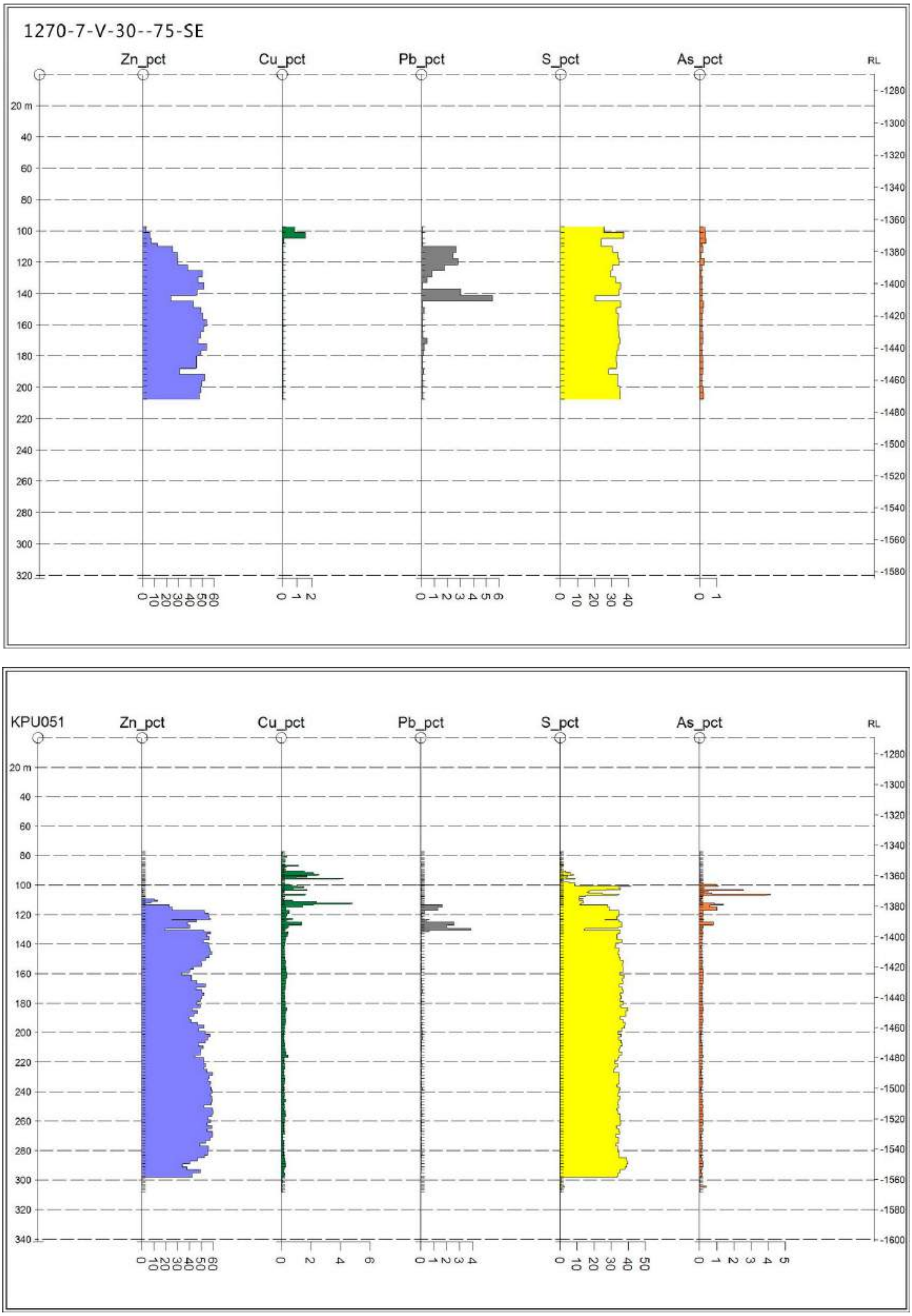
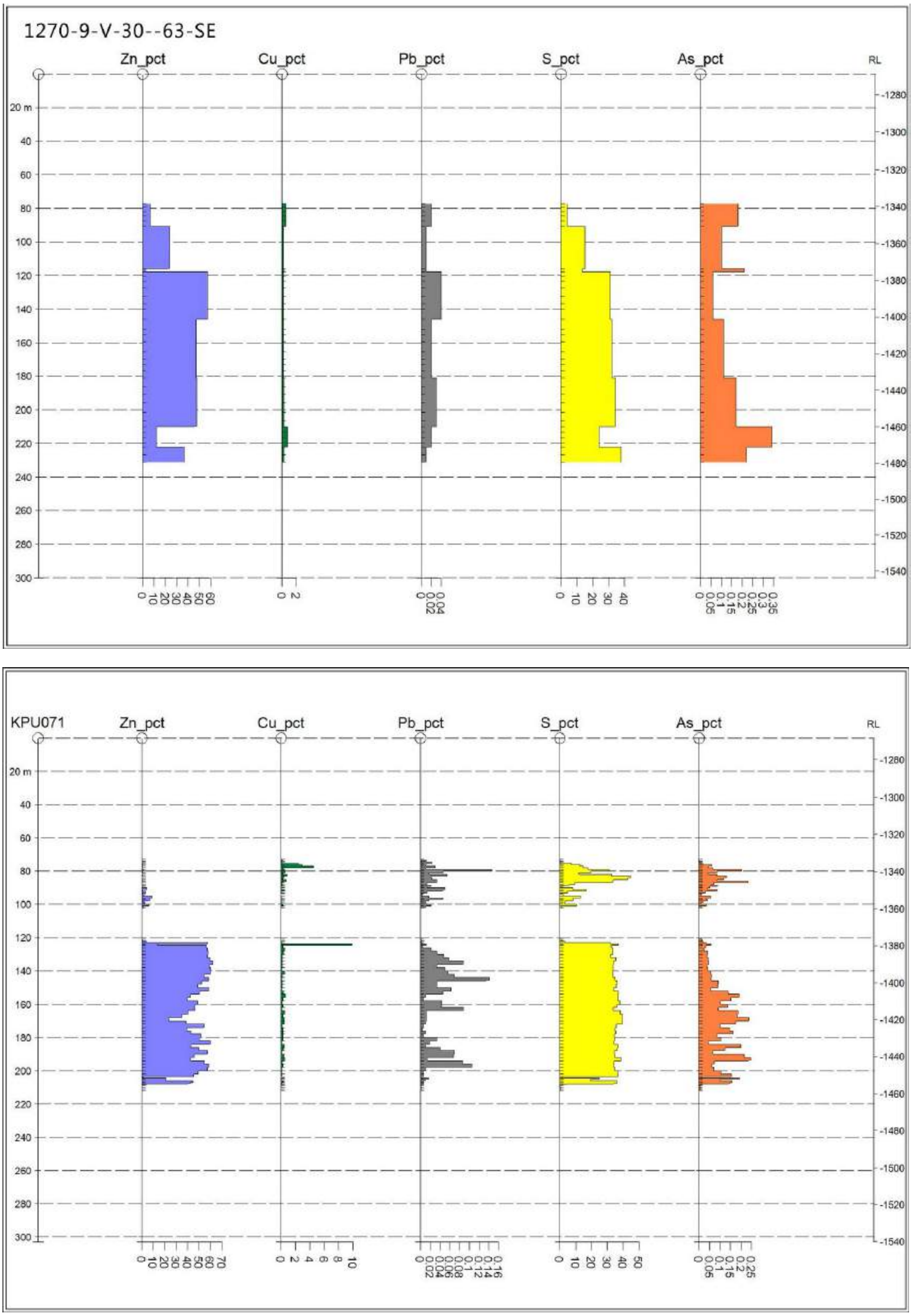


Figure 12-10

Comparison between Gécamines hole 1270/9/V+30/-63/SE and KICO twin hole KPU071



12.5 Visual Verification

Mineralization in selected Gécamines and KICO drillholes was observed by the MSA QPs and compared against the assay results for these holes. It was concluded that the assays generally agree well with the observations made on the core.

12.6 Data Verification Conclusions

In the opinion of the QP, the results of the core re-sampling programme confirm that the assay values reported by Gécamines are reasonable and can be replicated within a reasonable level of error by international accredited laboratories under strict QAQC control.

13 MINERAL PROCESSING AND METALLURGICAL TESTING

The Kipushi processing plant originally comprised crushing, milling, flotation and concentration, and was in continuous operation from the late 1920s until the mine's closure in 1993. The main products from the mine were reported as zinc and copper concentrates. The mine also produced lead, cadmium and germanium during this period.

Ivanhoe has undertaken two sets of testwork. The first set in 2013 included mineralogy, comminution and flotation testing. The second set in 2015 was to examine Dense Media Separation (DMS). A review of potential process routes was undertaken by Ivanhoe that suggested, given the favourable density differences between massive sulphides and the gangue material, Heavy Media or DMS was considered as a highly likely alternate to flotation, potentially providing lower capital and operating costs.

OreWin undertook a review of the metallurgical testwork carried out by Ivanhoe. This included a review of the testwork procedures and results, and a visit in September 2015 to the Mintek Metallurgical Laboratory (Mintek) in Johannesburg, South Africa by OreWin's Principal Process Consultant.

13.1 Metallurgical Testwork - 2013

In 2013, approximately 60 kg of quarter-core was delivered to the Mintek laboratory for testwork that included mineralogy, comminution and flotation testing.

The composite sample head analysis was 38% Zn, 0.78% Pb, 0.4% Cu, 34% S, and 12% Fe. Mineralogy of the sample showed sphalerite being predominant (65.9%), followed by pyrite (24%), with galena and chalcopyrite present in minor quantities. The major gangue was silica and carbonaceous minerals. The sphalerite and galena are coarse grained, grains up to 1 mm and 0.5 mm respectively. Chalcopyrite is relatively fine grained, less than 0.04 mm.

Comminution testing showed the mineralisation to be soft, with Bond Ball Work Index of 7.8 kWh/t and SAG Milling Comminution (SMC) parameters A x b of 105. Preliminary flotation tests indicated a zinc rougher recovery of 87% at 56% concentrate grade with 50% passing 75 µm grind.

13.1.1 Metallurgical Testwork – 2015 Sample Selection, Preparation and Compositing

A metallurgical sampling and testwork campaign was conducted in early 2015. Testwork was again carried out at the Mintek Laboratory in Johannesburg, South Africa. The Big Zinc was the primary focus of this campaign. Six holes intersecting the Big Zinc were selected and core intervals were composited for metallurgical and mineralogical investigations. The samples came from hole numbers; KPU001, KPU003, KPU042, KPU051, KPU058, and KPU066. The core was selected to represent most mineralisation types in the Big Zinc; including but not limited to massive brown sphalerite (MSB), massive sulphide mixed (MSM), dolomite (SDO), etc. The target head grade for the composite sample was 37% Zn, based on the assayed intervals of the drill cores.

Drill core intersections used to make up the composite sample are shown in Table 13-1.

Table 13-1
Composite sample testwork details

HOLE ID	Sample Length	Sample Type	Hg (ppm)	Ag (ppm)	As (ppm)	Cu (%)	Ge (ppm)	Pb (%)	Zn (%)	S (%)	Measured Density	Measured Mass	Dominant Mineral
							Individual Drillholes						
KPU001	12.0	N_CORE	45.69	19.54	591.03	0.12	50.60	0.04	58.5	33.4	4.07	44.6	ZN
KPU001	9.8	N_CORE	1.50	0.68	263.90	0.01	6.54		0.4	1.9	2.89	27.4	SDO
KPU001 Total	**21.8**	**N_CORE**	**28.85**	**12.36**	**466.40**	**0.08**	**33.81**	**0.03**	**36.4**	**21.4**	**3.64**	**72.0**	
KPU003	12.0	N_CORE	52.32	15.65	651.41	0.16	83.69	1.57	53.7	32.3	4.00	43.0	PYR/ZN
KPU003	7.5	N_CORE	0.16	0.18	479.67	0.02	9.00		0.0	1.1	2.89	21.7	SDO
KPU003 Total	**19.5**	**N_CORE**	**34.82**	**10.46**	**593.81**	**0.12**	**58.64**	**1.04**	**35.7**	**21.9**	**3.65**	**64.7**	
KPU042	10.4	H_CORE	54.68	8.92	823.24	0.32	271.81	0.06	52.6	32.8	3.99	40.7	MSM
KPU042	10.8	H_CORE	3.92	2.01	799.29	0.23	39.62		2.4	5.2	3.05	33.6	SDO
KPU042 Total	**21.2**	**H_CORE**	**31.71**	**5.80**	**812.40**	**0.28**	**166.71**	**0.03**	**29.9**	**20.3**	**3.57**	**74.3**	
KPU051	12.0	N_CORE	45.19	9.05	1,396.32	0.24	55.13	0.07	49.9	35.8	4.42	50.3	MSM
KPU051	6.0	N_CORE	0.03	1.37	832.00	0.07	1.68		0.1	0.8	2.94	15.6	SDO
KPU051 Total	**18.0**	**N_CORE**	**34.48**	**7.23**	**1,262.54**	**0.20**	**42.46**	**0.05**	**38.1**	**27.5**	**4.05**	**65.9**	
KPU058	16.5	N_CORE	40.26	24.19	1,034.22	0.96	75.56	0.04	54.2	34.4	4.08	47.9	MBS/MSM
KPU058	6.0	N_CORE	1.10	5.00	3,477.90	0.33	1.95	0.00	0.1	8.6	3.09	20.8	SDO
KPU058 Total	**22.5**	**N_CORE**	**28.40**	**18.37**	**1,774.58**	**0.77**	**53.26**	**0.03**	**37.8**	**26.6**	**3.86**	**68.7**	
KPU066	14.7	N_CORE				0.13			47.6		4.23	54.6	MBS
KPU066	2.5	N_CORE				0.00			1.5		2.91	6.4	SDO
KPU066 Total	**17.2**	**N_CORE**				**0.12**			**42.8**		**4.26**	**61.0**	

HOLE ID	Sample Length	Sample Type	Hg (ppm)	Ag (ppm)	As (ppm)	Cu (%)	Ge (ppm)	Pb (%)	Zn (%)	S (%)	Measured Density	Measured Mass	Mass (%)
							Composite Sample						
ZN	77.6		38.11	12.53	738.68	0.32	82.90	0.27	52.5	27.3	4.14	281.0	69%
SDO	42.5		1.59	1.72	1034.52	0.13	14.12	0.00	0.9	3.5	2.97	125.6	31%
Total	**120.1**		**26.83**	**9.19**	**830.06**	**0.26**	**61.66**	**0.19**	**36.6**	**19.9**	**3.84**	**406.5**	**100%**

Approximately 407 kg of NQ (45 mm diameter) half core material was selected for the testwork and sent to the laboratory. The core was composited by crushing to –20 mm and then thoroughly blended before riffle-splitting a sub-sample of 220 kg. The 220 kg sub-sample was further split as follows:

- A 10 kg fraction was removed and crushed further to –1.7 mm and further split, prepared and submitted for head chemical analysis and mineralogical investigations.
- 3 x 70 kg batches were then prepared. Two batches were individually crushed to –12 mm and –6 mm respectively, the third batch was reserved already at –20 mm.

The remainder of the master composite sample (approximately 294 kg) was reserved for future testwork.

13.1.2 Head Assay and Mineralogy

Head assays results are presented in Table 13-2.

Table 13-2
Kipushi composite sample head analysis

	Zn (%)	Pb (%)	Fe (%)	Ca (%)	Si (%)	Cu (%)	Mg (%)	S (%)
Average Assay	40.1	1.45	5.97	6.20	1.73	0.27	3.55	25.5

Mineralogical investigations were conducted on the crushed material, at 100% passing 1.7mm. The main minerals encountered in order of abundance were sphalerite (67%), galena (2%) and chalcopyrite (1%). The main gangue minerals in the sample were dolomite (18%), pyrite (8%) and quartz (3%).

13.1.3 Dense Media Separation and Shaking Table Testwork

Dense medium separation (DMS) is often used as a simple concentration technique for materials with sufficient density differentials between waste and mineralization.

DMS washability profiles were evaluated in the laboratory at three feed crush sizes using a combination of heavy liquid separation (HLS) and shaking tables. Fine material (-1 mm), mainly generated during crushing, was screened off ahead of HLS separation and tested on bench scale shaking tables (shaking tables provide a laboratory scale simulation of a commercial spiral plant). Fine material of -1 mm is not suitable for treatment by HLS.

HLS or sink-float analysis is a laboratory scale characterisation method that uses heavy liquid as a medium of separation. The density of the liquid is adjusted by adding a fine powder such as ferro silicon (FeSi). Representative 20 kg sub-samples of the -20+1 mm, -12+1 mm and -6+1 mm fractions were subjected to HLS testwork at density cut points between 2.6 g/cm^3 and 3.8 g/cm^3 at increments of 0.1 g/cm^3. The HLS results indicated that a density cut point of 3.1 g/cm^3 was optimal in all cases. The results are summarised in Table 13-3. The summary shows that across all three crush sizes, zinc recoveries of over 99% were achieved at a product grade of ~55% Zn (based on HLS feed only). Gangue material, mainly dolomite, was rejected to the float stream at an average mass percentage of 26% for all three crush sizes. Finer crushing does not appear to effect zinc upgrading or gangue rejection, it does however increase fines generation which bypass the HLS and are treated on the less efficient shaking tables.

Table 13-3

Summary of HLS results at a density cut point of 3.1 g/cm^3

	Head Grade		Concentrate (Sinks)			Tailings (Floats)	
Size Fraction	Calculated Zn (%)	Calculated Ca (%)	Mass yield (%)	Zn Grade to conc (%)	Zn Rec (%)	Mass yield (%)	Ca rejection (%)
-20+1mm	40.3	5.87	72.6	55.4	99.7	27.4	91.6
-12+1mm	39.6	6.00	74.1	53.2	99.6	25.9	86.0
-6+1mm	40.6	5.93	72.5	55.8	99.6	27.5	90.6

The fine material (-1 mm), removed ahead of the HLS was tested on a bench scale shaking table (the shaking table is a bench scale technique used to evaluate the commercial application of spirals) to evaluate the separation of gangue from mineralized material. The shaking table results for the fines associated with the three crush sizes are presented in Table 13-4.

The shaking table results indicate that a zinc concentrate product with a recovery of ~61% at a grade ~55% Zn was achieved for the -1mm fraction at all three crush sizes (based shaking table feed). Recovery losses of between 36% and 39% to spiral tails were mainly due to slimes and the inefficient recovery method (shaking table).

Table 13-4

Shaking table results summary

	Head Grade		Concentrate (conc1-tails1)			Tails (slimes+tails2)		
Size Fraction	Calculated Zn (%)	Calculated Ca (%)	Mass yield (%)	Zn grade in concentrate (%)	Zn recovery (%)	Mass yield (%)	Zn grade (%)	Zn rec loss (%)
-20+1mm	43.3	4.99	48.1	54.9	61.0	51.9	32.6	39.0
-12+1mm	42.9	5.08	49.0	54.2	61.9	51.0	32.0	38.1
-6+1mm	42.5	5.41	49.0	55.6	64.0	51.0	30.0	36.0

13.1.4 Discussion and Conclusion

Performance across the HLS and the shaking table, as a function of feed, is the same for all three crush sizes. The HLS circuit achieved 99% recovery at a concentrate grade ~55% Zn, while the shaking table achieved 61% recovery at a concentrate grade ~55% Zn. The difference in overall performance of the three crush sizes is the mass percentage reporting to the -1 mm fines fraction processed through the less efficient shaking tables. The relatively low mass percentage of the -20 mm crush size material reporting to the shaking tables makes this result far superior as only 10% of feed bypass the HLS compared to 22% and 32% of the -12 mm and -6 mm samples respectively.

Testwork concentrate specifications are given in Table 13-4. Penalty elements analysis are generally within acceptable limits.

Table 13-5
Concentrate Analysis

Description	Zn (%)	Pb (%)	Fe (%)	Ca (%)	Si (%)	Cu (%)	Mg (%)	S (%)	Au (ppm)	Ag (ppm)	Ge (ppm)	Cd (ppm)	Sb (ppm)	Hg (ppm)	As (ppm)	Cl (ppm)	F (ppm)
Final Concentrate	55.4	2.1	7.5	0.7	1.2	0.3	0.3	29.3	0.3	33.4	82.7	2159	9.8	37.9	874.2	260.3	861.3

A summary of metallurgical testwork composite and testwork results is shown in Table 13-6.

Table 13-6

Summary of metallurgical testwork composite and testwork results

		Sample Length (m)	Zn (%)	Measured Density	Sample Mass (kg)	Mass (%)
Total Samples	**Mineralised**	77.63	52.53	4.14	281	69
	Non-Mineralised	42.49	0.85	2.97	126	31
	Average	98.96	36.57	3.84	407	100
Testwork	**Concentrate**		55.50			70
	Tailings		6.10			30
	Head Grade		40.60			100
KPU001	**Mineralised**	12.00	58.55	4.1	43.5	62
	Non-Mineralised	9.76	0.38	2.9	25.1	38
	Average	21.76	36.38	3.6	68.6	100
KPU003	**Mineralised**	12.00	53.73	4.0	42.7	66
	Non-Mineralised	7.50	0.02	2.9	19.3	34
	Average	19.50	35.72	3.7	61.9	100
KPU042	**Mineralised**	10.39	52.56	4.0	36.9	55
	Non-Mineralised	10.77	2.44	3.0	29.0	45
	Average	21.16	29.88	3.6	65.9	100
KPU051	**Mineralised**	12.00	49.87	4.4	47.2	76
	Non-Mineralised	6.00	0.10	2.9	15.6	24
	Average	18.00	38.07	4.1	62.8	100
KPU058	**Mineralised**	16.50	54.19	4.1	59.8	70
	Non-Mineralised	6.01	0.14	3.1	16.4	30
	Average	22.51	37.82	3.9	76.3	100
KPU066	**Mineralised**	14.74	47.64	4.2	57.6	89
	Non-Mineralised	2.45	1.50	2.9	6.3	11
	Average	17.19	42.79	4.3	64.0	100

13.1.5 Recommendations

It is recommended that Ivanhoe analyses the testwork and defines a process option that can be applied to further studies and metallurgical investigation. The following testwork is recommended to support future studies.

- DMS testwork on variability samples over a range of zinc feed grades and locations.
- If available, a bulk sample and pilot programme is recommended using DMS and spirals. This is to confirm the design criteria across a DMS / Spiral circuit.
- Mineralogy of feed and detailed concentrate analysis is suggested in order to ensure a suitable geometallurgical model can be created.

14 MINERAL RESOURCE ESTIMATES

On behalf of KICO, The MSA Group (MSA) has completed a Mineral Resource estimate for the Kipushi Zinc-Copper Project (Kipushi). Kipushi is located in the town of Kipushi in the Katanga Province in The Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC). Kipushi is an historical mine currently under care and maintenance that was previously operated by Gécamines.

To the best of the Qualified Person's knowledge there are currently no title, legal, taxation, marketing, permitting, socio-economic or other relevant issues that may materially affect the Mineral Resource described in this Technical Report, aside from those already mentioned in Item 4 of this Report.

The Mineral Resource estimate incorporates drilling data collected by KICO from March 2014 until November 2015 inclusive, which, in the Qualified Person's opinion, were collected in accordance with The Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum (CIM) "Exploration Best Practices Guidelines". Previous drilling work completed by Gécamines has been incorporated into the estimate following the results of a twin drilling exercise and verification sampling of a number of cores.

The Mineral Resource was estimated using the 2003 CIM "Best Practice Guidelines for Estimation of Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves" and classified in accordance with the "2014 CIM Definition Standards". It should be noted that Mineral Resources are not Mineral Reserves and do not have demonstrated economic viability.

The Mineral Resource estimate was conducted using Datamine Studio 3 software, together with Microsoft Excel, JMP and Snowden Supervisor for data analysis. The Mineral Resource estimation was completed by Mr Jeremy Witley, the Qualified Person for the Mineral Resource.

14.1 Mineral Resource Estimation Database

The Mineral Resource estimate was based on geochemical analyses and density measurements obtained from the cores of diamond drillholes, which were completed by KICO between March 2014 and November 2015, with the cut-off date for data included in this estimate being 16 December 2015. As at the cut-off-date, there were no outstanding data of relevance to this estimate and the database was complete. In addition to the KICO drillholes, Gécamines drilled numerous diamond drillholes during the operational period of the mine, which were considered individually for inclusion into the estimate.

14.1.1 Gécamines Drillhole Database

The Gécamines database was compiled by capturing information from digital scans of hard copy geological logs. Information on the drillhole collar, downhole survey, lithology, sample assays and density were captured into Microsoft Excel spreadsheets and compiled into a Microsoft Access database by MSA. Databases had previously been compiled in a similar way by the Mineral

Corporation (a South African consultancy) prior to MSA's involvement in the project. These data were validated and revised and additional data were added to encompass the full area of interest.

The scanned copies of the log sheets supplied to MSA consist of:

- Typed or handwritten geological logs, with drillhole collar information on the sheet.
- Downhole survey reports. Survey readings were taken at approximately 50 m intervals, although not all of the holes have downhole survey data.
- Handwritten sample sheets with corresponding assay values.
- A Microsoft Excel sample sheet with corresponding assay data.

The degree of completeness of the hardcopy data was found to be variable and in many cases information such as assays or collar surveys was missing or incomplete. Assay data were generally contained in two hardcopy sheets, hand written sample and assay sheets, as well as computer print-out sheets. In many cases the computer print-out sheet represented composited data. The handwritten sample data were captured in favour of that in the computer print-out sheet.

The Gécamines collars were located in a local mine grid. In some cases Gaussian coordinates were available and where not available the mine grid coordinates were converted to Gaussian coordinates and validated against the surveys of the underground workings.

The following data were captured in spreadsheets:

- Collar information;
  - drillhole name – this contains information on the section number, bearing and dip of the drillhole,
  - easting and northing and local mine coordinates
  - elevation – where elevation was not recorded on the collar sheet, the elevation was gleaned from sections,
  - section name and level,
  - start and end date of the drilling,
  - comments,
  - core recovery in metres and percentage,
  - collar inclination and azimuth - the drillhole name itself contains information on the dip and direction at the hole collar that could be used in cases where the collar coordinates were not available elsewhere.
- Downhole surveys;
  - drillhole name,
  - depth of survey point,
  - magnetic bearing,

    - true bearing - the hard copy data exists as bearings relative to north or south and so the azimuth was calculated in degrees and added to the database,
    - dip,
    - comments.
    - Where there are no survey data for a drillhole, the collar survey inclination and bearing were used as the downhole survey.
- Assays;
    - drillhole name,
    - start and end depth of the sample (from, to),
    - grades of Cu, Pb, Zn, S, Fe, As,
    - units of assays,
    - density,
    - comments.
- Lithological log;
    - drillhole name,
    - start and end depth of the record (from, to),
    - two tiers of lithology were captured as Lith1 and Lith2 fields based on the free form geological descriptions in the log,
    - colour,
    - comments.
- Mineralization log;
    - drillhole name’
    - start and end depth of the record (from, to),
    - four levels of mineralization relating to the most abundant (Min1_code) to the least abundant (Min4_Code).

Once the data were captured, the accuracy of the capturing was determined by checking 10% of the captured data against the hardcopy logs. The data were then checked for completeness to ensure that each drillhole record has corresponding records for collar, down-hole survey, assay, lithology and mineralization. Missing aspects of the data were sought and captured if found. The maximum depth of each drillhole was compared across each of the tables to identify whether logs were complete. Any discrepancies were checked and rectified where appropriate.

Once the check for completeness was complete, the integrity of the data was checked:

- The drillhole name was compared to the level, section and cubby number recorded in the collar table. Discrepancies were checked against hardcopy records and corrected where necessary.
- The dip of the drillhole is recorded in the drillhole name, this was compared to the dip from the survey sheets. Discrepancies were checked with the hardcopies and were corrected where necessary.
- Consistency in the drillhole name between tables was compared and where transcription errors or errors in the hard copy data were found, the drillhole names were modified appropriately.
- Duplicated logs were removed. Where duplicate data were found, the most complete sheet was used.
- Missing, duplicated or overlapping intervals were identified by summing the length of intervals within a specific hole and comparing the sum to the depth in the collar table.
- The range of reported assays was checked to ensure that elements were consistently reported in percent or ppm as appropriate.

Once the data had passed the capturing validation tests they was imported into a Microsoft Access database for further checks. 33 of the drillholes did not have collar coordinates and the data from these holes were moved into a quarantined area of the database.

In total, 344 of the Gécamines drillholes were captured that passed the database checks.

14.1.2 KICO Drillhole Database

Ninety seven diamond drillholes were completed by KICO between March 2014 and November 2015. The data from these holes are stored in a Microsoft Access database that in the Qualified Person's opinion conforms to modern acceptable database management protocols. The information contained in the database is comprehensive and contains data tables for collar surveys, downhole surveys, lithology, structure, geotechnical measurements and observations, sample assays and density.

Eight Gécamines drillholes were re-sampled by KICO. Infill sampling of these holes was also completed where Gécamines had not sampled the lower grade intervals within the mineralized envelope. The original Gécamines data was replaced with the KICO re-sampled data for the Mineral Resource estimate.

11 of the Gécamines holes were twin-drilled by KICO (Table 12-4). Where the holes were drilled within a few metres of one another, the Gécamines holes were discarded from the final database used for modelling. This was necessary as the KICO drillholes were more completely sampled in the lower grade mineralization than the Gécamines holes and thus any short range discontinuities in the lower grade mineralization due to different sampling protocols were avoided.

Table 14-1
Kipushi twinned holes

Gécamines Drillhole	Twinned with KICO Drillhole
1270/5/V+30/-45/SE	KPU046
1270/5/V+30/-65/SE	KPU064
1270/11/V+30/-65/SE	KPU062
1270/5/V+30/-55/SE	KPU059
1270/17/W/-35/SE	KPU070
1270/17/W/-76/SE	KPU069
1270/5/V+30/-75/SE	KPU057 & KPU051
1270/15/W/-20/SE	KPU068
1270/7/V+30/-75/SE	KPU051
1270/9/V+30/-63/SE	KPU071
1270/13/V+45/-30/SE	KPU065

The KICO sample assay database contains assay data for a number of elements as shown in Table 14-2.

Table 14-2
Assays in Kipushi sample database

Element	Element Symbol	Units	Lower Detection Limit
Gold	Au	ppb	1
Platinum	Pt	ppb	20/50
Palladium	Pd	ppb	20/50
Mercury	Hg	ppm	0.01/10
Silver	Ag	ppm	5 or 0.05
Arsenic	As	ppm	10
Cadmium	Cd	ppm	10
Cobalt	Co	ppm	10
Copper	Cu	ppm	50
Germanium	Ge	ppm	5
Lead	Pb	ppm	20
Zinc	Zn	ppm	50
Rhenium	Re	ppm	0.1
Sulphur	S	%	0.01
Nickel	Ni	ppm	20/50
Molybdenum	Mo	ppm	5
Uranium	U	ppm	0.5
Vanadium	V	ppm	20/50

Silver was first assayed using a single acid digest method, which has a lower detection limit of 5 ppm and 5 ppm precision. Where the initial silver assay returned a value of 50 ppm or less, the silver grade was determined again by aqua regia digest method, which is considered to be more accurate at lower levels. Hence two records for silver were found in the database. In the final data used in the Mineral Resource estimate, the initial single acid digest values of 50 ppm or less were replaced by the aqua regia values.

Where the assay returned a value of less that the lower detection limit, the value was assigned a minus value in the database equivalent to the lower detection limit of that element multiplied by minus 1. For estimation purposes, all negative assays were re-assigned a zero value.

14.2 Exploratory Analysis of the Raw Data

14.2.1 Validation of the Data

A final validation exercise was completed by the Mineral Resource Qualified Person. The validation process consisted of:

- Examining the sample assay, collar survey, down-hole survey and geology data to ensure that the data are complete for all of the drillholes.
- Examination of the assay and density data in order to ascertain whether they are within expected ranges.
- Examining the de-surveyed data in three dimensions to check for gross spatial errors and their position relative to mineralization.
- Checks for "from-to" errors, to ensure that the sample data do not overlap one another or that there are no unexplained gaps between samples.

The data validation exercise revealed the following:

- Below detection limit values were set to negative values in the database. All below detection limit assays were set to a value of zero for estimation purposes.
- There are intervals of Gécamines core that were not sampled or assayed. These intervals were set to zero grade on the assumption that there was no visible mineralization worth sampling and thus the core interval is barren. The Gécamines cores were selectively sampled and samples were only taken when mineralization was visibly determined to be above a threshold perceived to be economic at the time. For this reason, the assignment of zero grades to un-sampled intervals in the Gécamines database may be considered conservative, although this is the only reasonable option for the data.
- There are intervals of KICO core that were not sampled or assayed. These intervals were set to zero grade on the assumption that there was no visible mineralization worth sampling and thus the core interval is barren. The KICO cores were mostly sampled throughout the length within the mineralized zones and the assignation of zero grades to un-sampled intervals will not result in any biases. For KPU075, a large part of the mineralized intersection was not sampled, it being used for metallurgical studies. For this hole the assays were set to null ('-') values where there are no sample assay data available within the mineralized zone (as observed by the mineralization log).

- The assay data available for the Gécamines holes varies in completeness. If the copper value is blank the assays for each element were set to zero including copper. Where a sample has copper and/or zinc values but other assays are missing these were also set to null and the copper and/or zinc values were retained.
- Several of the KICO specific gravity measurements are outside of expected limits. Two measurements are less than 2.1 and were set to a null value ("-") by MSA. Two measurements are greater than 5.25 (5.77 and 6.98) and were set to null values.
- There are no unresolved "from-to" errors in the database.
- The assay values in the database are within expected limits for the Kipushi mineralization.
- There are no assays at the upper detection limit that were not sent for over-limit assays.

Drillholes were discarded from the Gécamines database for a number of reasons:

- There are eight cases where an entire Gécamines drillhole had intersected the mineralized zone and no assays were captured. In each of these cases the drillhole was rejected from the estimation database.
- Four Gécamines drillholes appear to be incorrectly coordinated as they do not plot in the expected position relative to other holes and the Kipushi mineralized zones. These drillholes are 1132/18/V+6/-60/SE, which does not fit the mineralized zones, 1138/1/R+31/-70/SW which plots well within the Fault Zone footwall, 1138/1/R+31/-70/NW mineralized intercept plots well within the Série Récurrenté footwall and 1132/10/HZ/SE for which the geology is not consistent with the surrounding drillholes and does not fit the geological model. These four holes were not used in the modelling process.
- 1132/4/V+30/-55/SE has the same assay values in two adjacent intervals and so was discarded as it is likely this is erroneous. 1270/5/V+30/-85/SE has many of the same assay values in adjacent intervals and it appears the same long interval may have been divided into short intervals. This drillhole was discarded from the estimation database.
- Many of the Gécamines sample lengths appear excessive due to composited data (where sample lengths have been combined into longer intervals) being captured. Gécamines would take long samples (often 4 m or more) in homogenous mineralization and so the data from each hole that contain excessive sample lengths (>4 m) were examined. The assays from these holes were flagged and not used for grade estimation if they appeared to be composited data. The composite sample hole data were used in the construction of the model define the mineralization extents, but were not used in the estimation of the grade block model. In total the assays from 131 Gécamines holes were not used for grade estimation.
- Fourteen Gécamines holes had been drilled along or close to the plane of the mineralization either in dip or strike direction in the *Série Récurrenté*. These holes were not used for grade estimation but were used for defining the extents of the mineralization.

- Eleven Gécamines holes had been twin-drilled and were removed in favour of the KICO drillholes.

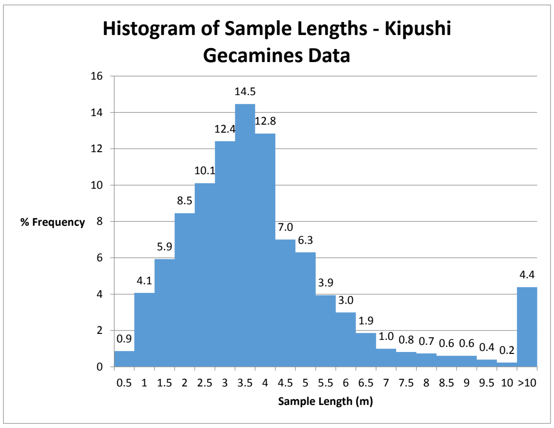
In total there are 93 valid KICO drillholes that intersected the mineralized zones. 107 Gécamines drillholes were deemed acceptable for use in the grade interpolation process and an additional 145 Gécamines drillholes were included for the purpose of defining mineralization limits.

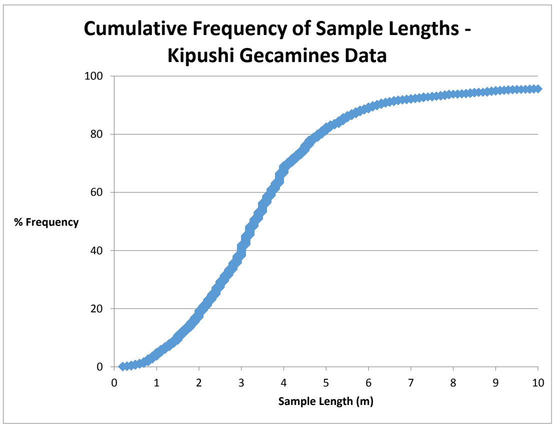
The validated KICO and Gécamines data were combined for grade estimation. Consideration of the lack of certainty in the quality of the Gécamines data was made when classifying the Mineral Resource into the respective CIM categories of Measured, Indicated or Inferred.

14.2.2 Statistics of the Sample Data

The Gécamines sample data were captured from scans of hard copy hand written and digital logs. Gécamines tended to use a variety of sample lengths considerable longer than what would normally be used in modern practice. In addition, as the database contains composite sample lengths, a number of extreme sample lengths were reported from the database with 4.4% of the sample lengths being greater than 10 m (Figure 14-1). The most frequent sample lengths are between three and four metres and 82.5% of the sample records are less than 5 m long. As mentioned in section 14.2.1, Gécamines drillholes that contained well mineralized sample lengths that were excessive were flagged in the estimation database. These holes were used in the construction of the grade shell to define the mineralization extents, but were not used in the estimation of the grade block model.

Figure 14-1
Histogram and cumulative frequency plot of the sample length data - Gécamines

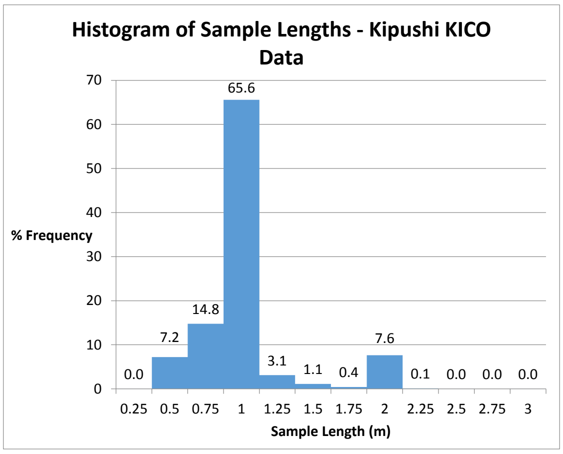


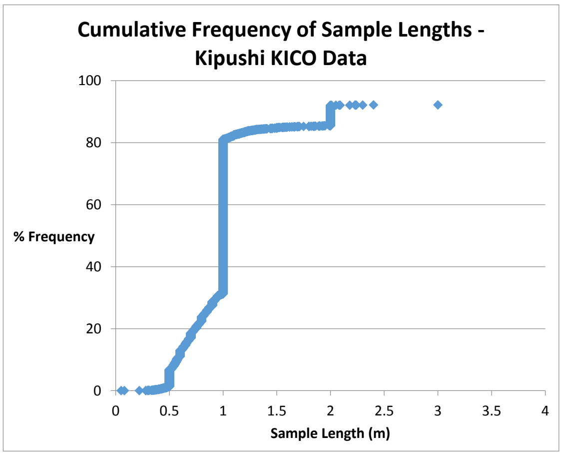


The KICO sampling honoured the intensity of mineralization and geological contacts. In homogenous zones nominal sample lengths of one or two metres were taken, with the longer samples tending to be taken from low grade or waste zones (Figure 14-2).

Figure 14-2

Histogram and cumulative frequency plot of the sample length data - KICO





14.2.3 Statistics of the Assay Data

Platinum and palladium assays are of negligible grade, assays being largely below the detection limit with rare instances of assays of 20, 40 or 60 ppb. The assays for gold are low and only 11 values are greater than 0.5 g/t and there are only 41 values above 0.2 g/t. Two samples returned assays of 2.72 g/t and 3.16 g/t Au respectively.

Not all of the KICO samples were assayed for nickel, vanadium or uranium. The earlier drillholes completed by KICO were assayed for nickel and vanadium but, due to the low values experienced, they were discontinued. KPU001 and KPU002 were not assayed for uranium.

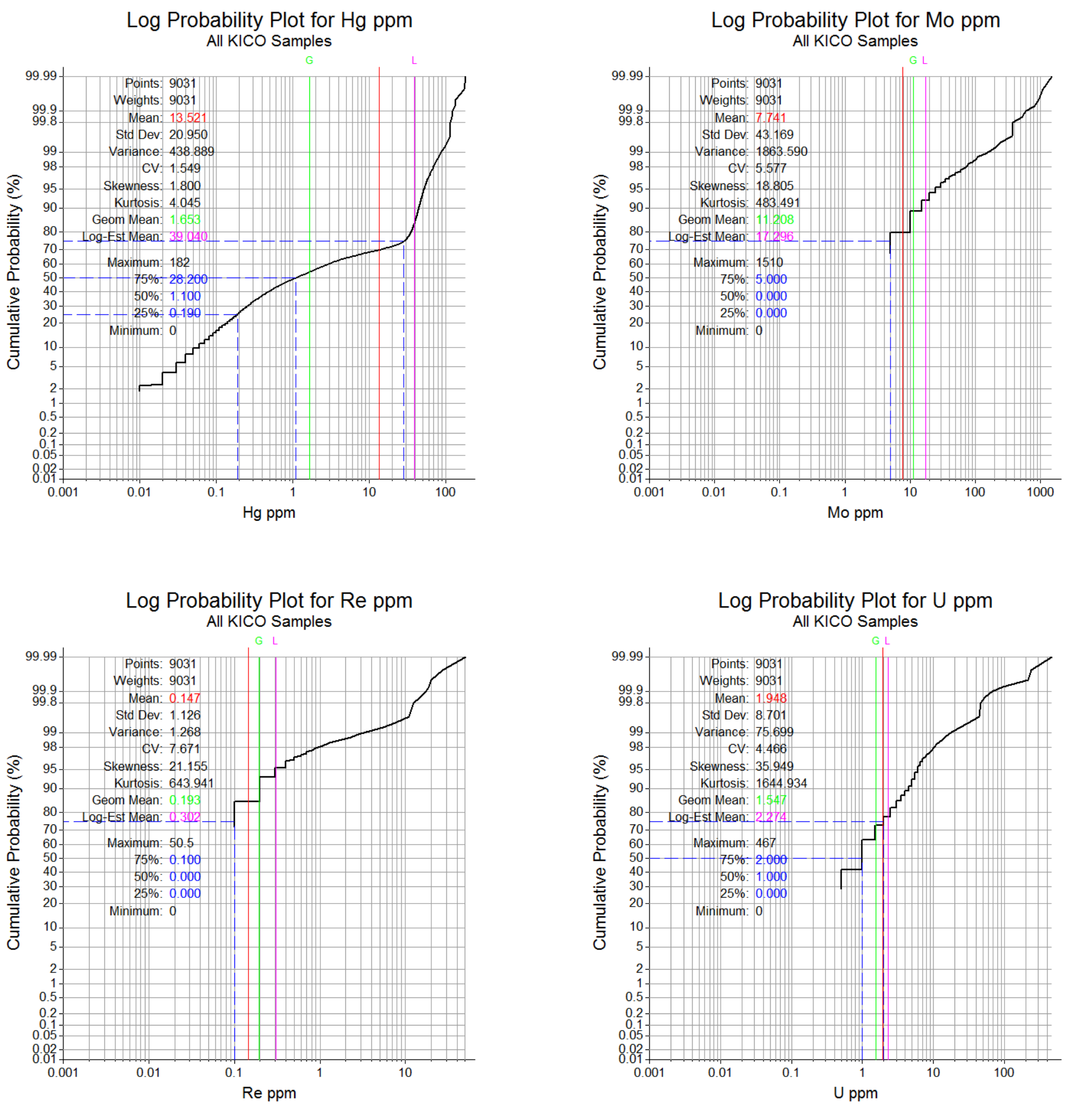
The highest nickel assay is 200 ppm with the majority of the values being below the lower detection limit. Most of the vanadium values are below or slightly above the lower detection limit with the maximum assay being 640 ppm.

As the assays for Pt, Pd, Au, Ni, and V are of negligible grade, these elements were not considered further in the Mineral Resource estimate.

The KICO samples were also assayed for mercury, uranium, molybdenum and rhenium. Some of the samples showed significant grades for these elements, but overall they are low (Figure 14-3). 94% of the mercury assays are less than 50 ppm, 0.5% of the values are above 100 ppm and the highest assay is 182 ppm. 67% of the molybdenum assays are below the lower detection limit (5 ppm), 2.5% are above 50 ppm and the highest assay is 1,510 ppm. 72% of the rhenium assays are below the lower detection limit of 0.10 g/t, 2 % are above 1 ppm and the highest assay is 50.5 ppm. Uranium values are generally low with approximately 98% of the values being below 10 ppm and the maximum assay being 467 ppm. Given the low numbers of significant assays for Hg, Mo, and Re these elements were not considered further in the Mineral Resource estimate, as the value that they could contribute to the project is insignificant. Uranium may be considered a nuisance or deleterious element in situations where it exists in amounts too low to derive economic value. It is uncertain whether the amount of uranium at Kipushi will be of any impact to the project given the generally low values.

Further details on the mercury, molybdenum, rhenium and uranium data are found in Figure 14-3.

Figure 14-3
Log probability plot for mercury, molybdenum, rhenium and uranium data



Copper, lead zinc, sulphur, arsenic silver, germanium, cobalt, cadmium and density were considered of importance to the Kipushi project and these were examined in greater detail and estimated into the Mineral Resource block model. Iron was not considered.

14.2.3.1 ***Univariate Analysis***

A summary of the sample assay statistics of the un-composited data at Kipushi is shown in Table 14-3 for the Gécamines data and Table 14-4 for the KICO data.

Table 14-3

Summary of the raw validated sample data*[1] for the Gécamines drillholes

Variable	Number of Assays	Mean Value	Minimum Value	Maximum Value
Cu%	2,181	2.42	0.01	60.80
Pb%	1,917	0.68	0.01	16.40
Zn%	2,154	10.05	0.01	63.15
S%	1,926	12.84	0.03	43.65
As%	1,823	0.17	0.005	7.46
Ag g/t	No Data	-	-	-
Ge g/t	No Data	-	-	-
Co ppm	No data	-	-	-
Cd ppm	No Data	-	-	-

*[1]Where re-sampled Gécamines assays have been replaced with KICO assays

Table 14-4

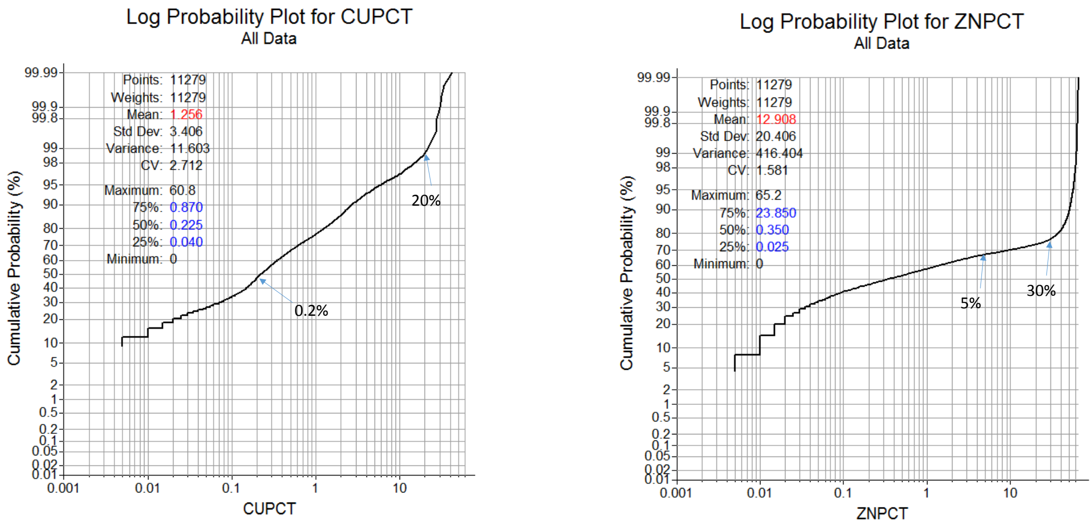
Summary of the raw validated sample data for the KICO drillholes

Variable	Number of Assays	Mean Value	Minimum Value	Maximum Value
Cu%	9,031	0.99	0.00	33.30
Pb%	9,031	0.17	0.00	17.90
Zn%	9,031	13.72	0.00	65.20
S%	9,031	13.15	0.00	51.70
As%	9,031	0.19	0.00	14.70
Ag g/t	9,031	12.9	0.00	3,260.0
Ge g/t	9,031	25.8	0.0	755
Co ppm	9,031	49	0.0	25,300
Cd ppm	9,031	702	0	7,850
Density g/cm^3	5,203	3.38	2.13	5.21

The Gécamines database does not contain values for silver, germanium, copper or cadmium as well as some of the copper, lead, zinc sulphur and arsenic values. The mean assay values for the KICO copper and lead data are less than those of the Gécamines data as the KICO cores were completely sampled in the potentially mineralized zones, unlike the Gécamines sampling that was selective aimed at higher copper grade mineralization.

Several zones of mineralization have been identified by Gécamines and KICO. The zones of mineralization are either copper dominant or zinc dominant with varying amounts of other elements. The grade distributions are characterised by large amounts of low grade data (below approximately 0.2% for copper and 5% for zinc), medium grade data and high grade (above approximately 20% for copper and 20% for zinc) data. Approximately 23% of the combined valid Gécamines and KICO samples are above 20% zinc and only 1% of the samples are greater than 20% copper (Figure 14-4).

Figure 14-4
Log probability plot for Copper and Cumulative Distribution for Zinc sample assays



14.2.3.2 ***Bivariate Analysis***

Scatterplots were made that compare the grades of individual elements against one another. The scatterplots for the total data show various relationships that indicate mixed mineralization domains. Several mineralization styles at Kipushi exist, the zinc-rich zones resulting in different bivariate relationships than the copper-rich zones. No clear relationships was found between copper, lead, zinc and cobalt. Mixed linear relationships are evident between copper and sulphur, zinc and sulphur, copper and density and zinc and density, the zones tending to be either copper or zinc rich. The strongest relationships are observed between lead and silver, zinc and germanium, and sulphur and density. A very strong relationship was observed between zinc and cadmium.

14.2.3.2.1 Regression for un-assayed elements

There is a strong relationship between copper-lead-zinc and sulphur and between zinc and cadmium. Sulphur assays are not always present in the Gécamines samples and there are no cadmium assays at all in the Gécamines dataset. For these elements a regression formula was applied to the missing data to ensure that the relationships between them are locally preserved in the estimate (Figure 14-5). A third order polynomial line was fitted to the sulphur vs copper-lead-zinc regression and a fourth order polynomial line was fitted to the cadmium vs zinc regression. Missing values for elements that do not have a strong relationship between one another were left as missing (null) values in the estimation data.

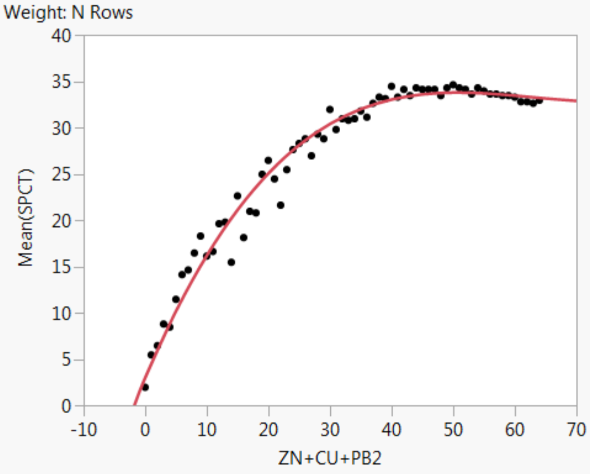
Figure 14-5

Sulphur and Cadmium Regressions

Sulphur vs Cu-Zn-Pb

Bivariate Fit of Mean(SPCT) By ZN+CU+PB2

Weight: N Rows



Polynomial Fit Degree=3

Polynomial Fit Degree=3

Mean(SPCT) = 12.599754 + 0.6354932*ZN+CU+PB2 - 0.0168965*(ZN+CU+PB2-21.6598)^2 + 0.0001364*(ZN+CU+PB2-21.6598)^3

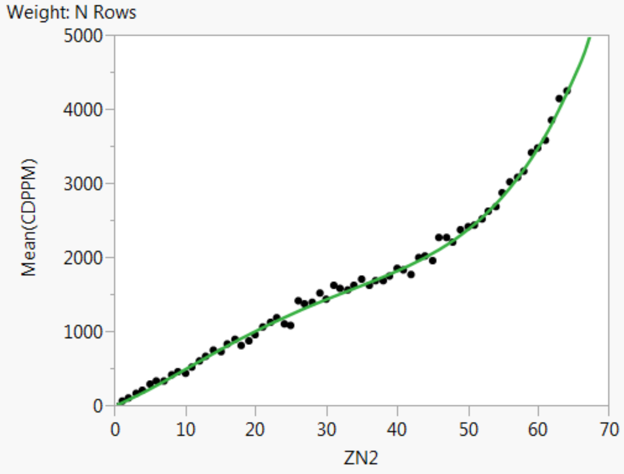
Summary of Fit

RSquare	0.992999
RSquare Adj	0.992655
Root Mean Square Error	12.21277
Mean of Response	18.37613
Observations (or Sum Wgts)	7389

Cadmium vs Zn-Pb

Bivariate Fit of Mean(CDPPM) By ZN2

Weight: N Rows



Polynomial Fit Degree=4

Polynomial Fit Degree=4

Mean(CDPPM) = 60.262023 + 48.173915*ZN2 - 0.5282148*(ZN2-19.5372)^2 - 0.006386*(ZN2-19.5372)^3 + 0.0006879*(ZN2-19.5372)^4

Summary of Fit

RSquare	0.99863
RSquare Adj	0.998539
Root Mean Square Error	487.8532
Mean of Response	984.5786
Observations (or Sum Wgts)	7469

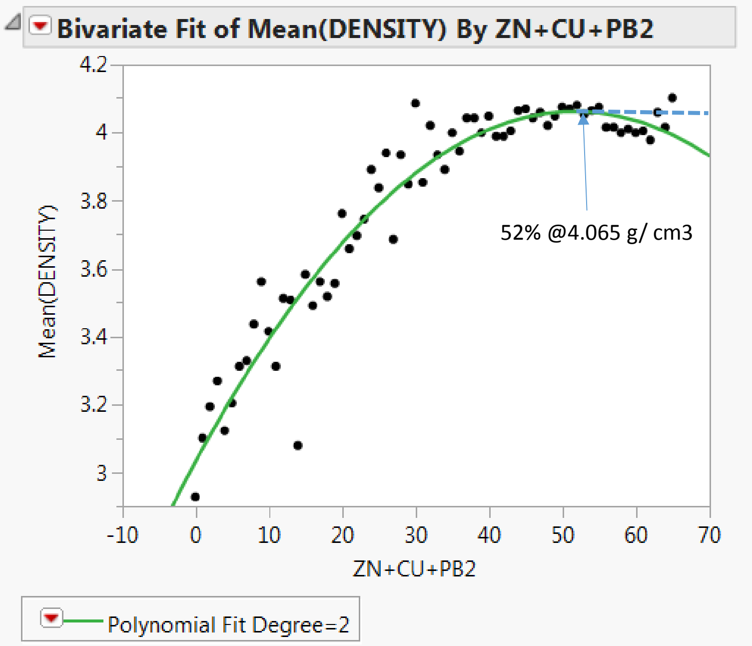
14.2.3.2.2 Density Determination

Density was measured by KICO on whole lengths of half core samples using Archimedes principal of weight in air versus weight in water. Not all of the KICO samples were measured for density. Many of the Gécamines density values were derived from a calculation or considered unreliable and so the Gécamines density values were discarded. A regression was formulated from the KICO measurements in order to estimate the density of each sample based on its grade. This formula was applied to all of the Gécamines samples and to the KICO samples that did not have density measurements performed on them. It was found that a summation of copper, zinc and lead grade versus density produced a reasonable regression for the multi-element mineralization at Kipushi, however the mineralization at Kipushi is complex and it was difficult to produce a perfect fit for all grade ranges.

A second order polynomial curve was fitted to the data as shown in Figure 14-6. The regression is capped at 52% Cu+Zn+Pb and a constant of 4.065 g/cm^3 was applied to samples above this grade.

It should be noted that use of regression formulae is not ideal and local biases will occur, however it is expected that on average the density for each zone will be accurate.

Figure 14-6
Density Regression



Polynomial Fit Degree=2

Mean(DENSITY) = 3.4458597 + 0.0147302*ZN+CU+PB2 - 0.0003865*(ZN+CU+PB2-32.5)^2

Summary of Fit

RSquare	0.925354
RSquare Adj	0.922985
Root Mean Square Error	0.089354
Mean of Response	3.784311
Observations (or Sum Wgts)	66

14.2.4 Summary of the Exploratory Analysis of the Raw Dataset

- KICO assays below detection limit were assigned zero values, they existing as negative values in the original database. The below detection values for the Gécamines data were retained at the very low, but positive, values existing in the data.
- Intervals of KICO core that were not sampled or assayed were assigned zero values for each of the elements of interest. This is with the exception of KPU075, for which a large part of the mineralized intersection was not sampled, it being used for metallurgical studies. For this hole the assays were set to null values where there are no sample assay data available within the mineralized zone as defined by the mineralization log.
- The assay data available for the Gécamines holes varies in completeness. If the copper value is blank the assays for each element were set to zero including copper. Where a

sample has copper and/or zinc values but other assays are missing, the other values were set to null and the copper and/or zinc values were retained. This is based on the assumption that the missing values were not assayed and assigning zero value to them would be incorrect.

- Drillholes were discarded from the Gécamines database for a number of reasons, such as no assays captured, incorrect coordinates, excessive samples lengths due to composite data being captured and inappropriate drilling directions. Gécamines holes that had been twin-drilled by KICO were also removed from the estimation data set.
- In total there are 93 valid KICO drillholes that intersected mineralization and were accepted into the estimation. 107 Gécamines drillholes were deemed acceptable for use in the grade interpolation process and an additional 145 Gécamines drillholes were included for the purpose of defining mineralization limits.
- The quality of the Gécamines data is less certain than for the KICO data. Consideration of this was made when classifying the Mineral Resource into the respective CIM categories of Measured, Indicated or Inferred.
- Copper, lead zinc, sulphur, arsenic silver, germanium, cobalt, cadmium and density are considered of importance to the Kipushi project. A number of other elements were assayed by KICO, however their concentrations are not significant. Uranium may be considered a nuisance or deleterious element in situations where it exists in amounts too low to derive economic value. It is uncertain whether the amount of uranium at Kipushi will impact the project at the low grades in which it occurs.
- Missing values for sulphur and cadmium were assigned based on regression analysis in order to maintain the strong relationships observed between them and other groups of metals.
- Density measurements taken by KICO on core samples were used to generate a regression with copper, lead and zinc and the regressed values were assigned to those KICO samples that did not have density measurements performed on them and all of the Gécamines samples.
- Several zones of mineralization have been identified, either copper-rich or zinc-rich. These are spatially separate and need to be considered as separate domains in estimation.

14.3 Geological Modelling

14.3.1 Mineralized Zones

The mineralization at Kipushi comprises sulphide replacement bodies within the Kakontwe Sub-Group dolomites and Série Récurrenté Sub-Group dolomitic shales of the Nguba Group.

Two zones of zinc-rich mineralization occur, the Big Zinc and the Southern Zinc Zone, which lie adjacent to the copper-rich Fault Zone mineralization. In places, the Big Zinc mineralization is juxtaposed against the Fault Zone, although in many areas zones barren of significant mineralization occur between them. The Southern Zinc zone is an elongate lense of sphalerite rich mineralization parallel and juxtaposed against the Fault Zone mineralization. A zone of high grade copper, silver and germanium occurs within the Big Zinc.

The Fault Zone strikes north-northeast to south-southwest and dips at approximately 70° to the west, with the zinc mineralization forming irregular steeply dipping bodies in the immediate footwall to the Fault Zone. A second zone of copper-rich mineralization occurs in the Série Récurrenté which strikes from east to west, is sub-vertical and plunges steeply to the west. Where the Fault Zone and Série Récurrenté meet, mineralization tends to be enhanced in a sub-zone known as the Nord Riche. A sub-vertical copper-zinc-germanium rich sulphide zone occurs as a splay from the Fault Zone at depth towards the south west.

Significant concentrations of lead, silver, cobalt and germanium occur in variable amounts in all zones.

Although there are distinct lithological and structural controls to the mineralization, a characteristic of the replacement nature of the mineralization is that it cuts across the layering in places and is not stratabound. For this reason, the mineralization was modelled on the basis of grade thresholds while taking cognisance of the controlling lithological and structural trends.

In total seven zones were modelled as separate wireframes:

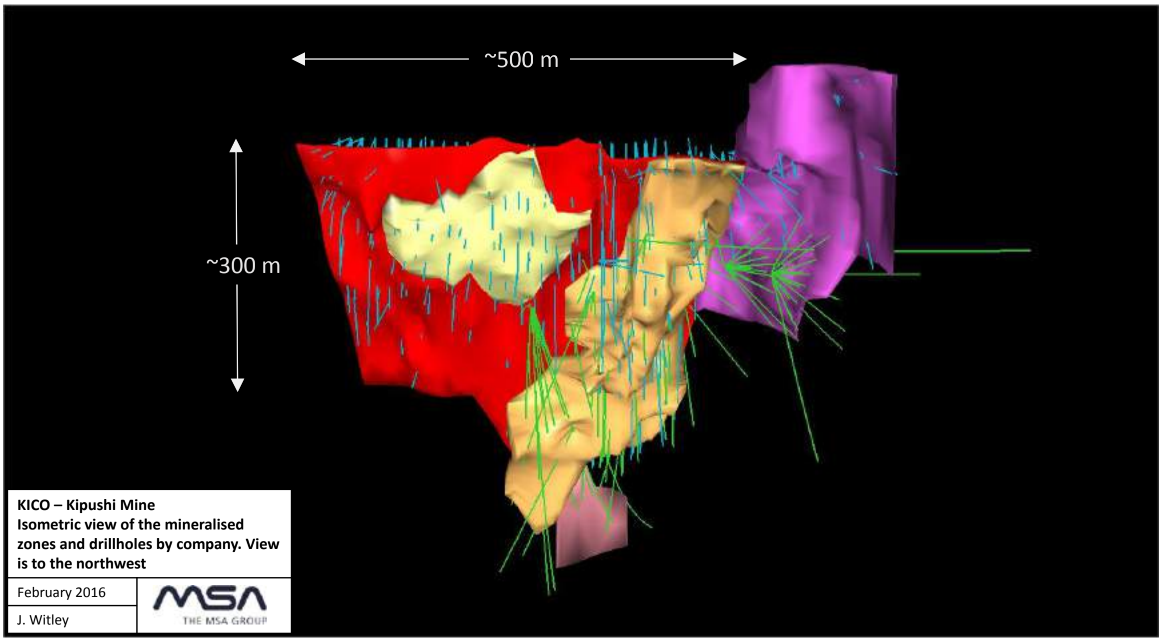
- The Fault Zone – Zone 1
- The Big Zinc – Zone 2
- The Southern Zinc - Zone 3
- The *Série Récurrenté* – Zone 4
- The massive sulphide lense within the *Série Récurrenté* – Zone 5
- The high grade zone within the Big Zinc – Zone 6.
- The Splay Zone - the high zinc-copper-germanium splay from the Fault Zone – Zone 7.

Mineralized zones were identified using a threshold value of 5% for zinc and 1.0 % for copper. Strings were constructed along sections perpendicular to the dip of the mineralization by snapping to the drillhole intercepts. The sections were examined along strike to ensure that the thickness trends of the mineralization were continued from one section to the next. The interpreted strings were then linked to form wireframe solids.

All of the available validated data were used for the construction of the mineralized models. The Gécamines drillholes that were rejected from the grade estimation due to excessive sample lengths were also used.

The resulting wireframe shells show local irregularities although clear trends are evident, particularly for the Big Zinc that plunges steeply to the southwest. An isometric view of the wireframe models is shown in Figure 14-7.

Figure 14-7
Isometric View of Kipushi wireframes and drillholes (view is approximately to the northwest)



Red Wireframe = Fault Zone (Zone 1)
Orange Wireframe = Big Zinc (Zone 2)
Beige Wireframe = Southern Zinc (Zone 3)
Violet Wireframe = *Série Récurrenté* (Zone 4)
Pink Wireframe = Splay Zone (Zone 7)
Blue traces =Gécamines drillholes
Green traces = KICO drillholes

14.4 Statistical Analysis of the Composite Data

The drillhole sample data that were considered suitable for estimation purposes were selected by zone using the modelled wireframes and then composited to 2 m lengths using density-length weighting. The composites were de-clustered to a cell size of 50 mX, 50 mY and 50 mZ by weighting by the number of data in each cell and summary statistics were compiled for each mineralized zone (Table 14-5).

The summary statistics were interrogated, paying particular attention to the variability (as exhibited by the coefficient of variation (CV)) and the skewness, as high skewness tends to be an indication of a number of particularly high grade values within a generally lower grade distribution.

Table 14-5
Summary statistics (de-clustered) of the estimation 2 m composite data for grades and SG

Variable	Number of composites	Min	Max	Mean	CV	Skewness
			Zone 1			
Cu %	719	0.00	42.25	2.89	1.35	3.0
Pb %	708	0.00	3.72	0.11	3.72	6.7
Zn %	719	0.00	45.55	3.60	1.77	3.0
S %	719	0.00	50.01	11.56	0.87	1.2
As %	533	0.00	9.33	0.24	2.36	7.3
Ag g/t	263	0.00	145.6	18.8	1.30	2.6
Ge g/t	263	0.00	112.7	14.2	1.26	2.2
Co ppm	263	0.00	13,560	193	4.95	9.9
Cd ppm	719	0.00	4839	192	1.90	4.9
Density	719	2.70	4.54	3.24	0.08	1.2
			Zone 2			
Cu %	3,450	0.00	60.80	1.09	3.27	7.5
Pb %	3,422	0.00	16.71	0.79	2.92	3.8
Zn %	3,450	0.00	63.60	28.17	0.75	-0.1
S %	3,450	0.00	45.72	23.15	0.59	-0.6
As %	3,410	0.00	5.77	0.18	2.31	7.2
Ag g/t	2,473	0.00	1,031.7	13.7	1.77	13.3
Ge g/t	2,473	0.00	638.4	47.9	1.04	3.2
Co ppm	2,473	0.00	4315	16	6.29	31.2
Cd ppm	3,450	0.00	5,777	1,318	0.84	0.5
Density	3,450	2.46	4.75	3.69	0.12	-0.5
			Zone 3			
Cu %	118	0.00	13.53	1.85	1.12	2.6
Pb %	118	0.00	10.32	1.35	1.55	2.2
Zn %	118	0.00	51.90	17.37	0.87	0.3
S %	118	0.00	39.56	21.35	0.57	-0.3
As %	30	0.00	0.90	0.23	1.31	1.1
Ag g/t	0	-	-	-	-	-
Ge g/t	0	-	-	-	-	-
Co ppm	0	-	-	-	-	-
Cd ppm	118	0.00	2,545	831	0.86	0.2
Density	118	3.04	4.07	3.58	0.10	-0.1
			Zone 4			
Cu %	1,234	0.00	26.75	1.93	1.41	3.8
Pb %	1,200	0.00	1.94	0.04	4.72	8.9
Zn %	1,234	0.00	55.00	0.92	3.76	8.0
S %	1,234	0.00	35.61	2.89	1.64	3.8
As %	1,232	0.00	1.70	0.07	2.32	6.4
Ag g/t	341	0.00	57.6	8.0	1.05	2.8
Ge g/t	341	0.00	23.3	0.8	2.63	4.8
Co ppm	341	0.00	1,032	29	2.43	9.4
Cd ppm	1,234	0.00	976	43	3.05	5.0
Density	1,234	2.73	4.06	3.13	0.05	3.2
			Zone 5			
Cu %	44	0.87	30.89	12.99	0.70	0.4
Pb %	44	0.00	5.46	0.22	4.10	4.8
Zn %	44	0.02	53.00	14.59	1.23	0.8

S %	44	1.32	31.64	21.65	0.34	-0.8
As %	44	0.01	5.36	0.51	2.10	3.9
Ag g/t	44	5.35	432.3	58.3	1.15	3.8
Ge g/t	44	0.00	67.7	20.7	0.85	1.1
Co ppm	44	0.00	5,058	179	3.79	7.0
Cd ppm	44	0.00	4,308	923	1.30	1.1
Density	44	3.10	4.06	3.71	0.08	-0.4
			Zone 6			
Cu %	177	0.01	31.05	6.48	0.96	1.1
Pb %	177	0.00	13.10	0.77	2.18	3.9
Zn %	177	0.01	54.90	25.94	0.69	0.0
S %	177	0.26	43.25	25.81	0.44	-1.0
As %	177	0.00	0.92	0.20	0.85	1.8
Ag g/t	135	0.00	2,154.9	122.2	2.60	4.6
Ge g/t	135	0.00	339.4	61.4	0.82	2.1
Co ppm	135	0.00	3,880	163	3.19	5.9
Cd ppm	177	0.00	3,690	1,479	0.72	0.2
Density	177	2.67	4.25	3.80	0.11	-1.2
			Zone 7			
Cu %	97	0.00	20.16	2.99	1.35	1.8
Pb %	97	0.00	0.05	0.00	2.20	2.9
Zn %	97	0.00	64.27	22.42	1.18	0.5
S %	97	0.00	38.83	24.17	0.53	-1.0
As %	97	0.00	12.43	2.33	1.40	1.3
Ag g/t	97	0.00	82.3	14.0	1.10	1.8
Ge g/t	97	0.00	599.8	125.3	1.32	1.1
Co ppm	97	0.00	2,211	99	2.23	6.9
Cd ppm	97	0.00	5,499	1,480	1.21	0.6
Density	97	2.87	4.63	3.71	0.13	-0.3

For each element in each domain there are a significant number of composites with zero grade. These largely represent un-sampled intervals within the mineralization wireframes, many of which are derived from Gécamines sample data for which sampling was selective. There are no silver, germanium and cobalt data available for the Southern Zinc zone, this zone being informed only by Gécamines data.

The copper distributions are generally characterised by moderate coefficient of variation (CV) and are slightly positively skewed. Copper in Zone 2 (the Big Zinc) has a high CV and is strongly positively skewed. The zinc distributions in the zinc rich zones show low to moderate CVs and have near symmetrical distributions and low kurtosis (i.e. has a flat shape). Zinc distributions in the other zones are variable, with high CV's in the copper rich zones, but low to moderate in the high grade more massive copper-rich sulphide zones (Zone 5 and 6). Cadmium exhibits similar distributions as zinc. The CVs for lead are moderate to high and distributions are strongly positively skewed, they generally consisting of a small number of high grade values in a low grade population. Sulphur generally has low to moderate CVs, is negatively skewed in the massive sulphide zones (Zones 2, 3, 5 and 6) and positively skewed in the relatively lower sulphur grade copper-dominant zones (Zones 1 and 4).

Arsenic is strongly positively skewed except in Zone 6 and Zone 3, where CVs are low to moderate and the skewness is moderate. The strong positive skewness is caused by a small number of particularly high values in the distributions. Mean arsenic grades vary between 0.07% and 0.20% except for Zone 5 where the mean arsenic grade is 0.51% as a result of several high grade values which have a large impact, there being only 44 composites in this zone. The arsenic grades in the Splay Zone (Zone 7) are also high (average of 1.44%)

The silver distributions have moderate CVs and strong skewness as a result of a small number of extremely high values. Mean silver grades are particularly high in the massive chalcopyrite rich zones (Zones 5 and 6). Germanium CVs are low and distributions are moderately positively skewed except for Zone 4 that is generally of low germanium grade with a few values significantly higher than the mean value. Mean germanium values are high in the Big Zinc and the massive chalcopyrite and bornite rich zone (Zone 6) within the Big Zinc. Very high germanium values occur in the Splay Zone (Zone7).

Cobalt distributions are positively skewed with high CVs caused by a small number of high values.

Density distributions are slightly negatively skewed in the massive sulphide zones and slightly positively skewed in the lower grade copper-rich zones. CVs are low though and the skewness is not severe.

The generally moderate CVs indicate that a linear method, such as ordinary kriging, is appropriate to estimate the grades. The zones with high CV’s and that are strongly positively skewed are a result of a small number of high grade values that can be considered outliers and measures that control their impact are required.

14.4.1 Cutting and Capping

The log probability plots and histograms of the composite data were examined for outlier values that have a low probability of re-occurrence, particularly where a small proportion of high grade data made up a disproportional amount of the domain mean. The outlier values identified were capped to a threshold as shown in Table 14-6. The threshold was set at the next highest value below the lowest identified outlier value. Decisions on the capping threshold were guided by breaks in the cumulative log probability plots and the location of the high grade samples with respect to other high grade samples.

The capping reduced the extreme CVs but several remained high (>2).

Table 14-6
Values capped and their impact on sample mean and CV.

Attribute	Before Capping			After Capping			
	Number of Composites	Mean	CV	Cap Value	Number of Composites Capped	Mean	CV
Zone 1							
Cu %	719	2.89	1.35	24.34	1	2.86	1.31
Pb g/t	708	0.11	3.72	1.89	9	0.09	3.05
As %	533	0.24	2.36	3.66	8	0.23	2.00
Ge g/t	263	14.2	1.26	69	1	13.8	1.17
Co ppm	263	193	4.95	1,927	10	119	2.44
Cd ppm	719	192	1.90	1,816	1	187	1.70
Zone 2							
Cu %	3,450	1.09	3.27	26.3	3	1.06	2.97
Ag g/t	2,473	13.7	1.77	173	3	13.5	1.49
Ge g/t	2,473	47.9	1.04	340	7	47.5	0.99
Co ppm	2,473	16	6.29	418	8	13	2.99
Zone 3							
Cu %	118	1.85	1.12	8.3	1	1.82	1.05
Zone 4							
Cu %	1,234	1.93	1.41	17.2	8	1.91	1.36
Pb g/t	1,200	0.04	4.72	1.02	7	0.03	3.89
Zn %	1,234	0.92	3.76	19.5	8	0.84	3.18
As %	1,232	0.07	2.32	0.74	14	0.06	1.84
Ge g/t	341	0.8	2.63	9.0	2	0.8	2.33
Co ppm	341	29	2.43	159	6	25	1.25
Cd ppm	1,234	43	3.05	976	8	43	3.05
Zone 5							
Pb g/t	44	0.22	4.1	0.65	4	0.05	3.18
As %	44	0.51	2.10	1.97	1	0.37	1.36
Ag g/t	44	58.3	1.15	266	1	54.5	0.90
Co ppm	44	179	3.79	552	2	98	1.48
Zone 6							
Co ppm	135	163	3.19	714	5	104	1.88
Zone 7							
Co ppm	97	99	2.23	721	2	88	1.56

14.5 Geostatistical Analysis

14.5.1 Variograms

The 2 m composite data were examined using variograms that were calculated and modelled using Snowden Supervisor software. All attributes were transformed to normal scores distributions and the spherical variogram models were back-transformed to normal statistical space for use in the grade interpolation process.

Variograms were calculated on the 2 m composite data and modelled within the plane of mineralization with the minor direction being across strike. Rotations were aligned within each zone for all the attributes estimated. Normalised variograms were calculated so that the sum of the variance (total sill value) is equal to one.

Variograms were modelled with either one or two spherical structures. The nugget effect was estimated by extrapolation of the first two experimental variogram points (calculated at the same lag as the composite length) to the Y axis.

For the Fault Zone, a plunge of 52° to the southwest within the plane of mineralization was modelled. A plunge of 50° to the west was modelled for the *Série Récurrenté* grade continuity. A vertical plunge was modelled for the Big Zinc grade continuity. Although the limits of this zone plunge steeply to the southwest this trend was not evident in the grade continuity analysis. The directions of continuity were kept the same for each attribute within their respective zones.

There were insufficient data to calculate robust variograms for the Southern Zinc (Zone 3), the copper rich zone within the *Série Récurrenté* (Zone 5), the copper rich zone within the Big Zinc (Zone 6) and the Splay Zone (Zone 7). The variograms for the Big Zinc were applied to the Southern Zinc while adjusting the direction of continuity to the strike of this zone. The variograms for the Fault Zone were applied to Zones 6 and 7 and the variograms for the *Série Récurrenté* were applied to Zone 5.

For the zones that were modelled, the variogram models are robust, there being a number of experimental points at the chosen lag informing the model within the range of the variogram.

For all zones, the variogram ranges are in excess of the general drillhole spacing, with the drillhole spacing being closer than the range of the first variogram structure for most attributes.

The variogram model parameters are shown in Table 14-7, after the variance has been back transformed from normal scores, and examples of normal scores variograms are shown in Figure 14-8, Figure 14-9 and Figure 14-10 for Zone 1, Zone2 and Zone 4 respectively.

Figure 14-8

Zone 1 Copper Variograms

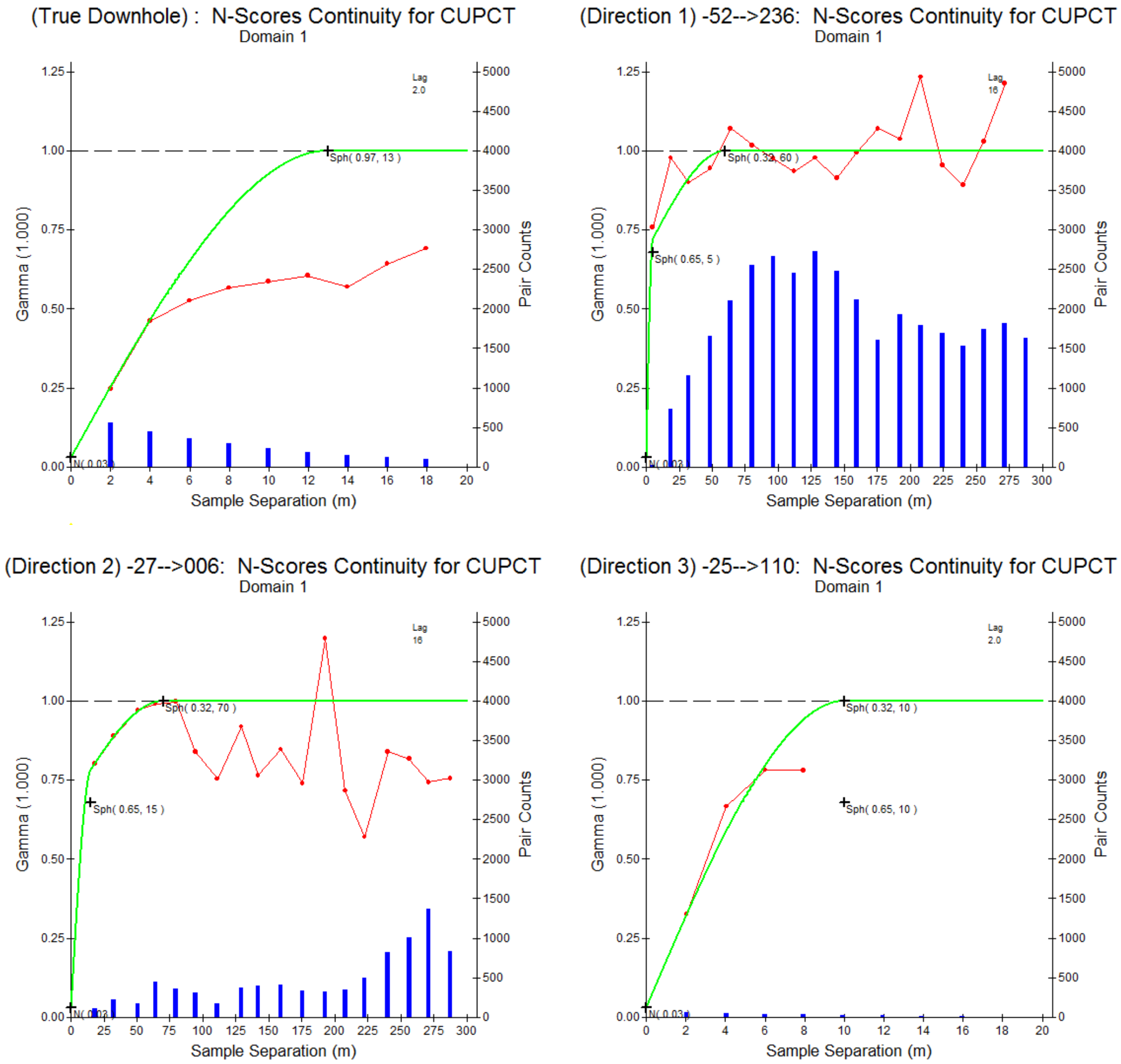


Figure 14-9
Zone 2 Zinc variograms

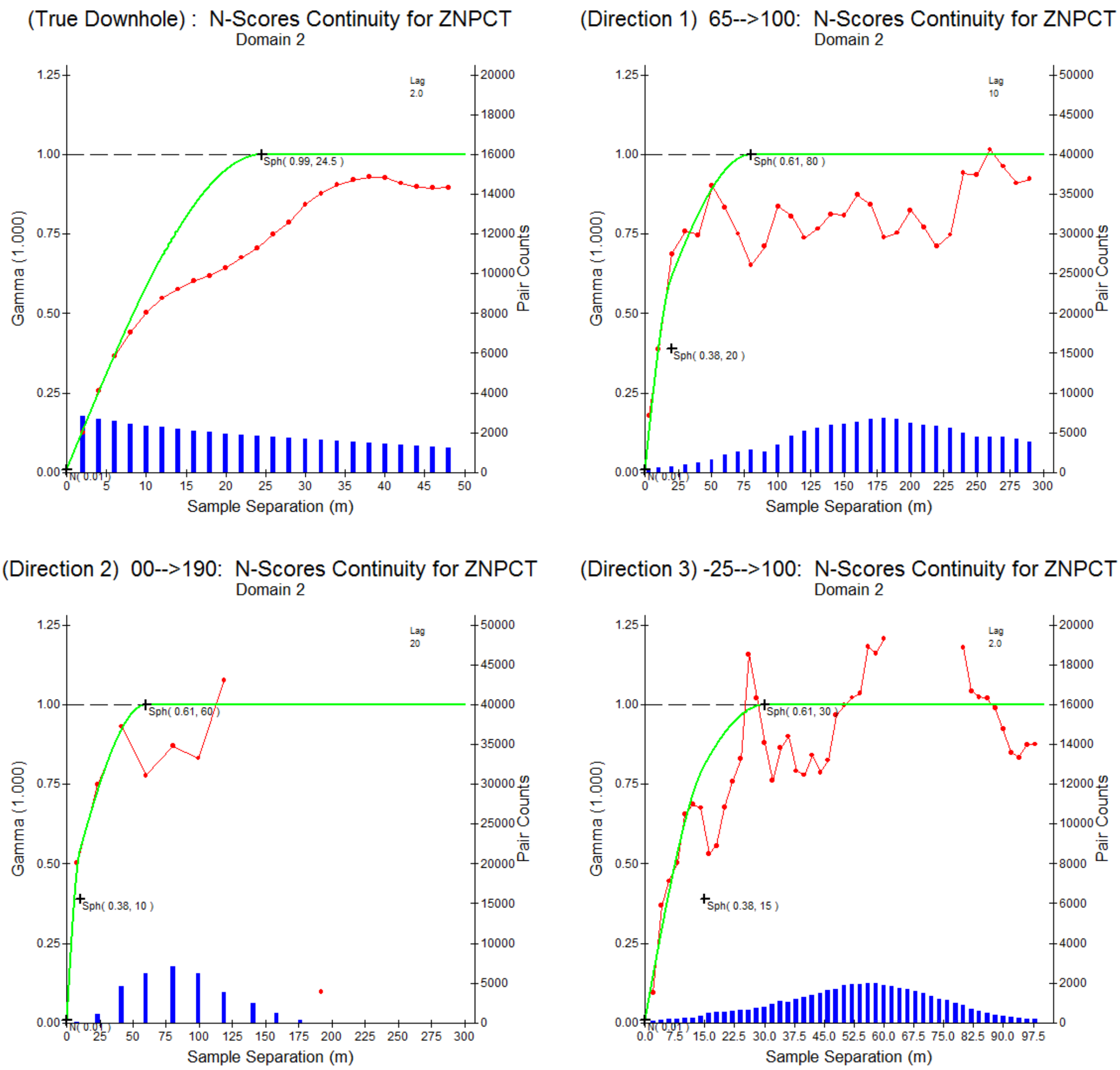


Figure 14-10
Zone 4 Copper variograms

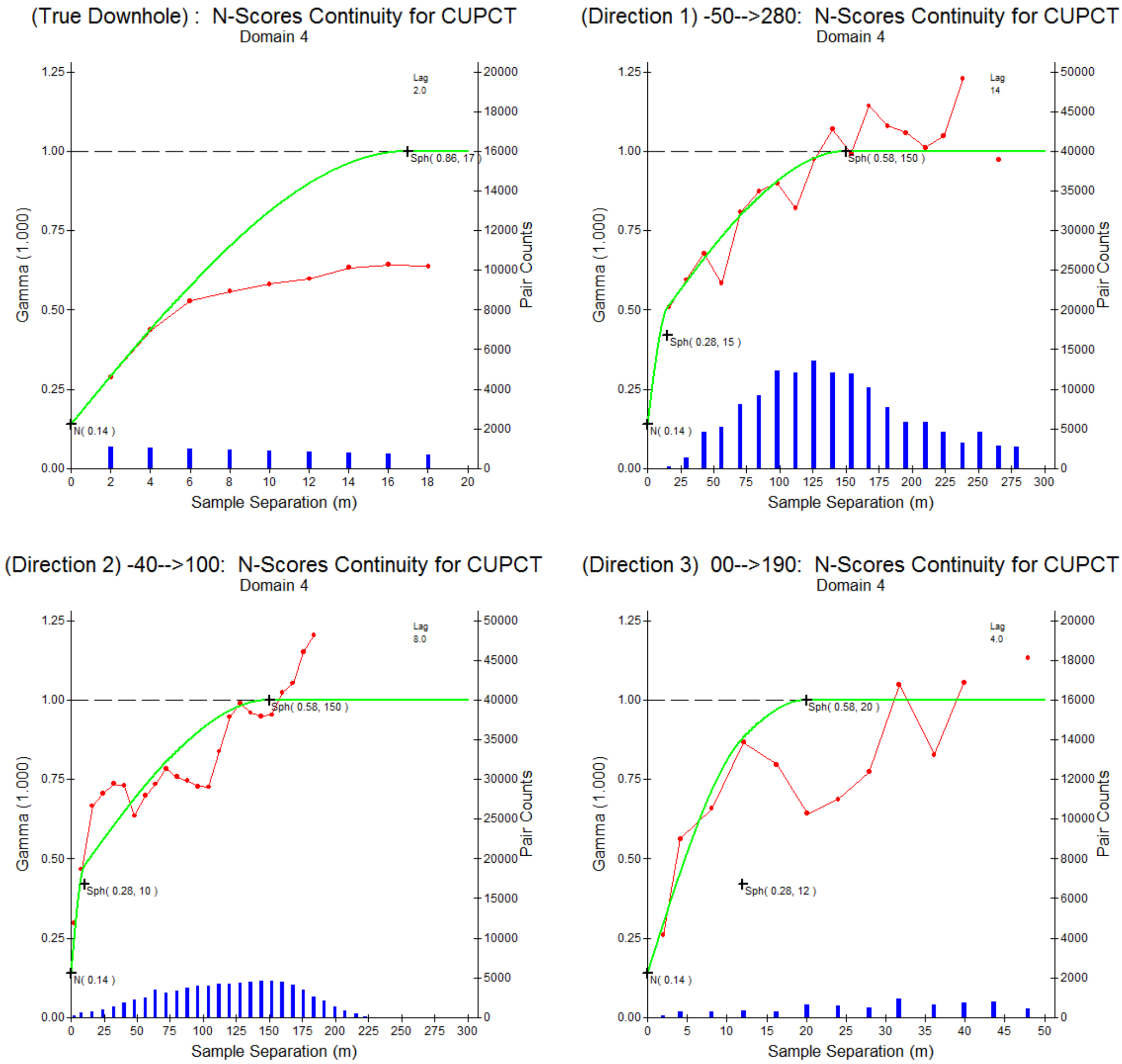


Table 14-7

Variogram Parameters – Kipushi

Attribute	Transform	Rotation Angle			Rotation Axis			Nugget Effect	Range of First Structure (R1)			Sill 1 (C1)	Range of Second Structure (R2)			Sill 2 (C2)
		1	2	3	1	2	3	(C0)	1	2	3		1	2	3	
Fault Zone																
Cu %	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.04	5	15	10	0.71	60	70	10	0.25
Pb %	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.09	115	115	14	0.91				
Zn %	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.02	15	50	14	0.55	80	55	14	0.43
S %	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.02	10	25	10	0.54	65	35	10	0.44
As %	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.02	25	25	8	0.98				
Ag g/t	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.13	25	125	10	0.52	125	125	10	0.35
Ge g/t	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.24	250	60	10	0.76				
Co ppm	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.4	90	90	10	0.6				
Cd ppm	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.02	30	15	14	0.61	80	55	14	0.37
Density	NS	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.12	60	25	6	0.88				
Big Zinc																
Cu %	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.15	25	8	7	0.72	80	70	10	0.13
Pb %	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.04	15	10	23	0.65	170	40	23	0.31
Zn %	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.01	20	10	15	0.44	80	60	30	0.55
S %	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.04	15	10	30	0.57	70	10	30	0.39
As %	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.16	15	10	9	0.69	65	10	9	0.15
Ag g/t	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.07	20	4	10	0.52	55	30	15	0.41
Ge g/t	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.06	15	10	25	0.61	95	75	25	0.33
Co ppm	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.46	30	10	11	0.21	30	35	11	0.33
Cd ppm	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.01	10	10	10	0.4	35	35	20	0.59
Density	NS	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.09	10	25	22	0.55	50	50	22	0.36

Attribute	Transform	Rotation Angle			Rotation Axis			Nugget Effect (C0)	Range of First Structure (R1)			Sill 1 (C1)	Range of Second Structure (R2)			Sill 2 (C2)
		1	2	3	1	2	3		1	2	3		1	2	3	
Série Récurrenté																
Cu %	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.21	15	10	12	0.35	150	150	20	0.44
Pb %	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.11	100	5	15	0.34	100	75	30	0.55
Zn %	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.16	10	15	35	0.48	200	100	35	0.36
S %	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.22	30	15	7	0.35	170	125	23	0.43
As %	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.18	48	25	8	0.53	170	120	20	0.29
Ag g/t	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.34	35	50	13	0.45	100	50	13	0.21
Ge g/t	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.26	70	70	8	0.74				
Co ppm	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.81	30	30	23	0.19				
Cd ppm	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.19	10	10	6	0.58	95	65	20	0.23
Density	NS	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.08	10	10	16	0.59	145	145	31	0.33

14.5.2 Indicator Variograms

The mineralization at Kipushi, in particular the Big Zinc, consists of extensive massive sulphide zones with pods of low grade material. It would be in-optimal to dilute the high grade massive sulphide zones with lower grades from low grade pods within these zones. Some of the low grade zones are caused by zero grades being applied to un-sampled intervals of the Gécamines drillholes. An indicator approach was used to discriminate between the high and low grade zones. Indicator variograms were calculated using the 2 m sample composites and modelled at a threshold of 5% Zn for the zinc rich zones and 0.5% Cu for the copper rich zones.

The indicator variograms were modelled in three directions, the variogram models being robust and informed by a reasonable number of experimental data. The variograms for the Big Zinc were applied to the Southern Zinc while adjusting the direction of continuity to the strike of this zone. The variograms for the Fault Zone were applied to Zone 6 and 7 and the variograms for the *Série Récurrenté* were applied to Zone 5.

Table 14-8

Indicator Variogram Parameters – Kipushi

Attribute	Transform	Rotation Angle			Rotation Axis			Nugget Effect	Range of First Structure (R1)			Sill 1 (C1)	Range of Second Structure (R2)			Sill 2 (C2)
		1	2	3	1	2	3	(C0)	1	2	3		1	2	3	
Fault Zone																
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	None	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	0.23	10	25	10	0.39	100	75	10	0.38
Big Zinc																
Zinc Indicator (5%)	None	110	115	90	Z	X	Z	0.15	20	20	35	0.59	75	65	45	0.26
Série Récurrenté																
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	None	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	0.39	20	15	5	0.26	135	80	8	0.35

14.6 Block Modelling

The wireframes were filled with cells 5 mX by 5 mY by 5 mZ, which is one third of the 15 m spaced drilling sections. The drilling was at various inclinations and the grade trends vary between the zones so an equidimensional block size was considered appropriate.

The parent cells were sub-celled to 1 mX by 1 mY by 1 mZ in order to best fill the irregular shapes of the mineralized bodies.

The seven different zone wireframes were filled separately and the blocks coded with the respective zone code.

The block model volume was compared to the wireframe volume and differences of less than 0.5% were found between the two, indicating that the wireframes were appropriately filled with block model cells.

14.7 Estimation

14.7.1 Indicator estimation

In order to retain the high grades in the massive zones and the low grades in the isolated low grade zones without smoothing the grades between them, an indicator approach was used to discriminate between them. The probability of a model cell being above or below a 0.5% Cu or 5% Zn threshold for the copper rich and zinc rich domains respectively was estimated using the 2 m composite data transformed to indicators, with 1 being above the threshold value and 0 being below. Ordinary kriging of the indicators into parent cells using the indicator variograms (Section 14.5.2) was carried out. The parameters used for the indicator estimation are shown in Table 14-9. These were aligned with the direction and distance of continuity as implied by the indicator variograms. Should an estimate not be achieved by selecting sufficient composites in the first search, the search was expanded until four composites were selected.

Table 14-9

Indicator Search Parameters – Kipushi

Attribute	Search Angle			Rotation Axis			Search Distance			Number of Composites		Second Search Multiplier	Number of Composites		Third Search Multiplier	Number of Composites	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
Fault Zone (Zone 1)																	
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	100	75	20	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
Big Zinc (Zone 2)																	
Zinc Indicator (5%)	110	115	90	Z	X	Z	160	60	60	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
Southern Zinc (Zone 3)																	
Zinc Indicator (5%)	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	160	60	60	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
***Série Récurrenté* (Zone 4)**																	
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	80	80	40	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
High grade zone in *Série Récurrenté* (Zone 5)																	
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	80	80	40	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
Copper rich zone within Big Zinc (Zone 6)																	
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	145	75	10	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4
Splay Zone (Zone 7)																	
Cu Indicator (0.5%)	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	75	75	10	4	8	1.5	4	4	10	4	4

14.7.2 Grade Estimation

Each of the elements and density were estimated using ordinary kriging, estimating into parent cells. Any cells that were not estimated were assigned the domain average values for either the above or below threshold data. A maximum of four composites from a single drillhole were allowed to estimate a cell in order to ensure that each estimate was estimated by more than one drillhole.

Each cell was estimated twice; an estimate using the below threshold data and an estimate using the above threshold data. The two estimates were then combined based on the proportion of above or below threshold as determined by the indicator kriging.

The same search parameters and variograms were used to estimate the above and below threshold values. The search parameters used are shown in Table 14-10. For Zone 5, the same parameters were used as for Zone 4, and for Zone 6 and 7 the same parameters were used as for Zone 1. A different search distance was allowed for each element, as the different elements tend to behave independently of each other. This is with the exception of cadmium and zinc, which are closely related, and the search parameter for zinc was applied to cadmium to ensure the relationship between these elements was preserved in the estimate. A 52°southwest plunge direction within the plane of mineralization was modelled for Zone 1. For Zone 2, a strong down dip plunge was used based on the continuity analysis which was also applied to Zone 3. A 50° plunge to the west in the plane of mineralization was applied to Zone 4.

14.7.2.1 *Boundary Conditions*

Each domain was estimated only using the drillhole data within it (hard boundaries). This is with the exception of Zone 6 (the high grade copper zone in the Big Zinc) where a semi-soft boundary was used that allowed one adjacent sample composite from Zone 2, as well as the sample composites in Zone 6, to estimate the Zone 6 grade. This was based on observations on the core that found that the transition from the high grade sphalerite mineralization in Zone 3 to the high grade copper mineralization in Zone 6 was not sharp, but rather a gradual changes over several metres. Likewise the Zone 2 estimate allowed for one sample within Zone 6 to be used.

Table 14-10

Search Parameters – Kipushi

Attribute	Search Angle			Rotation Axis			Search Distance			Number of Composites		Second Search Multiplier	Number of Composites		Third Search Multiplier	Number of Composites	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
Fault Zone (Zone 1)																	
Cu %	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	60	70	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	115	115	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	65	35	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	25	25	8	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	125	125	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	250	60	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	90	90	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	110	115	-60	Z	X	Z	60	25	6	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Big Zinc (Zone 2)																	
Cu %	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	80	70	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	170	40	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	80	60	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	70	10	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	65	10	9	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	55	30	15	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	95	75	25	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	30	35	11	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	80	60	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	100	115	90	Z	X	Z	50	50	22	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10

Attribute	Search Angle			Rotation Axis			Search Distance			Number of Composites		Second Search Multiplier	Number of Composites		Third Search Multiplier	Number of Composites	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
Southern Zinc (Zone 3)																	
Cu %	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	80	70	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	170	40	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	80	60	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	70	10	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	65	10	9	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	55	30	15	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	95	75	25	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	30	35	11	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	80	60	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	120	110	90	Z	X	Z	50	50	22	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
***Série Récurrenté* (Zone 4)**																	
Cu %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	150	150	20	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	100	75	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	200	100	35	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	170	125	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	170	120	20	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	100	50	13	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	70	70	8	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	30	30	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	200	100	35	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	145	145	31	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10

Attribute	Search Angle			Rotation Axis			Search Distance			Number of Composites		Second Search Multiplier	Number of Composites		Third Search Multiplier	Number of Composites	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
High grade zone in *Série Récurrenté* (Zone 5)																	
Cu %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	150	150	20	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	100	75	30	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	200	100	35	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	170	125	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	170	120	20	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	100	50	13	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	70	70	8	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	30	30	23	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	200	100	35	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	-170	90	50	Z	X	Z	145	145	31	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Copper rich zone within Big Zinc (Zone 6)																	
Cu %	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	60	70	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	115	115	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	65	35	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	25	25	8	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	125	125	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	250	60	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	90	90	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	110	90	90	Z	X	Z	60	25	6	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10

Attribute	Search Angle			Rotation Axis			Search Distance			Number of Composites		Second Search Multiplier	Number of Composites		Third Search Multiplier	Number of Composites	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
Splay zone (Zone 7)																	
Cu %	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	60	70	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Pb g/t	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	115	115	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Zn %	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
S %	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	65	35	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
As %	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	25	25	8	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ag g/t	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	125	125	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Ge g/t	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	250	60	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Co ppm	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	90	90	10	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Cd ppm	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	80	55	14	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10
Density	85	90	90	Z	X	Z	60	25	6	6	12	1.5	6	12	100	5	10

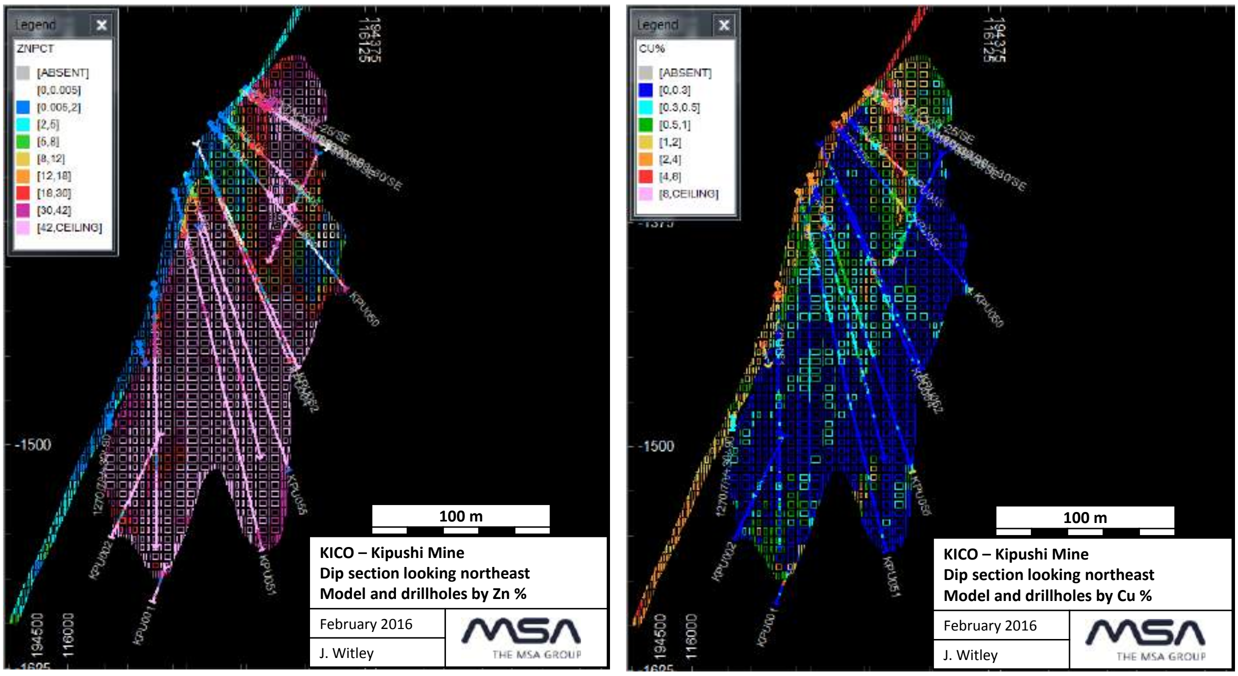
14.8 Validation of the Estimates

The models were validated by:

- visual examination of the input data against the block model estimates,
- sectional validation,
- comparison of the input data statistics against the model statistics.

The block model was examined visually in sections to ensure that the drillhole grades were locally well represented by the model and it was found that the model validated reasonably well against the data. A section showing the block model and drillholes is shown in Figure 14-11.

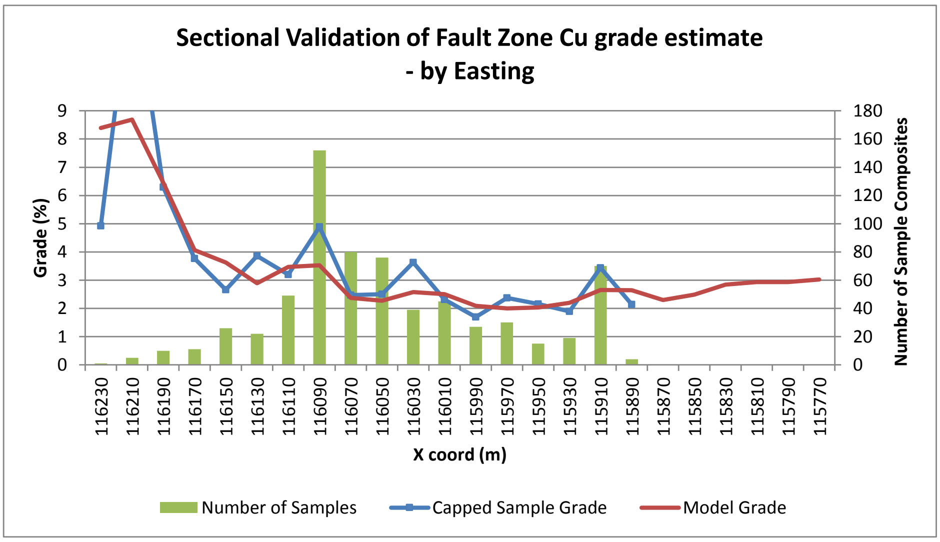
Figure 14-11
Section through Big Zinc and Fault Zone block model and drillhole data illustrating correlation between model and data, shaded by zinc (left) and copper (right).

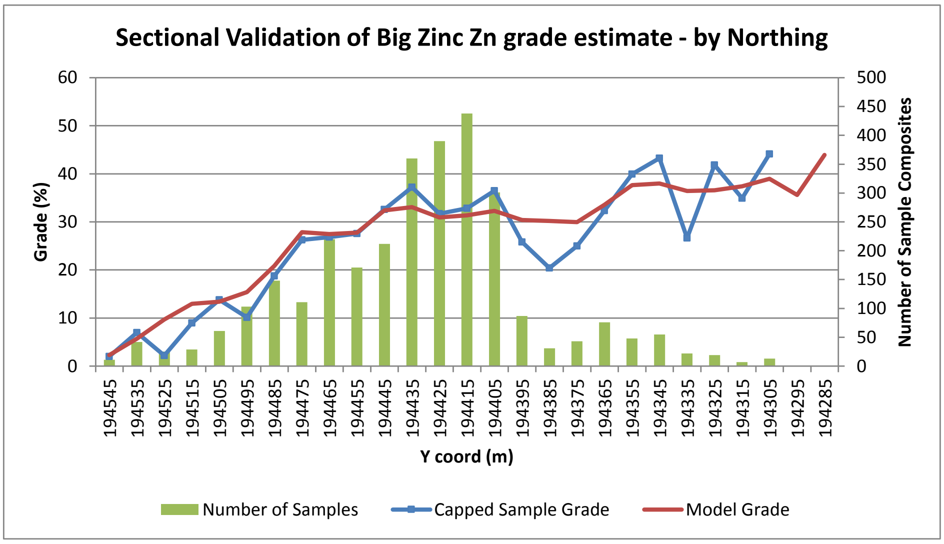


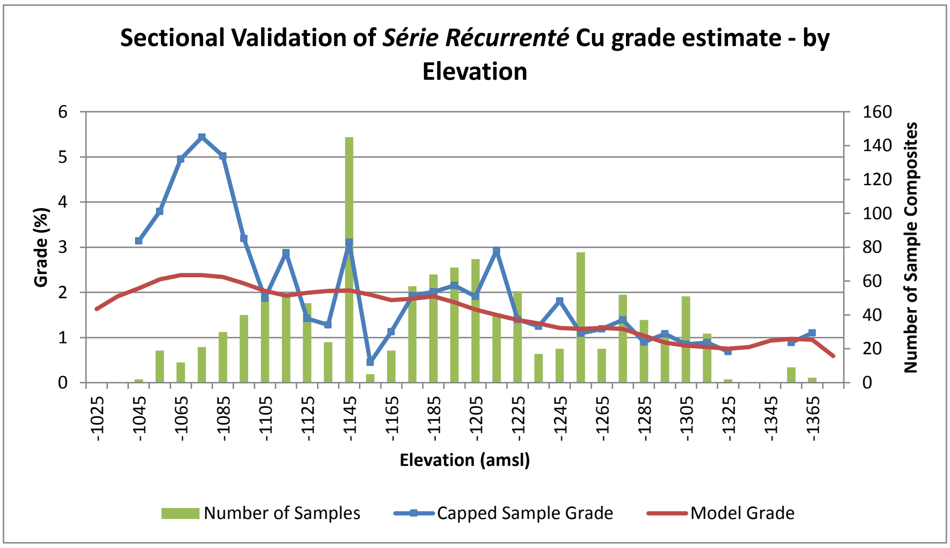
Sectional validation plots were constructed for each major element representing each zone. The sectional validation plots compare the average grades of the block model against the input data along a number of corridors in various directions through the deposit. Samples of the sectional validation plots are shown in Figure 14-12. These show that the estimates retain the local grade trends across the deposit.

Figure 14-12

Sectional validation plots







As a further check, the declustered drillhole composite mean grades were compared with the model grade (Table 14-11). The model and the data averages compare reasonably well for most variables. Those that did not compare within reasonable limits (±10%) were examined further. No consistent biases were found and the differences were all explained by the arrangement of the data relative to the volume of the model and are of no concern.

- The germanium and cobalt grade of the model is significantly higher than the mean of the data for Zone 1. Only the KICO drillholes were assayed for these elements and a large proportion of the model was outside of the KICO drilling area. The data on the fringes of the KICO drilling area, which are higher than the data mean, have been extrapolated to the southwest. This does not impact on the Mineral Resource estimate as the extrapolated area is in Zambia.
- The copper grades for the Zone 2 model are significantly lower than the mean of the data. Higher copper grades are found on the edges of the model, in the up dip area and concentrated in the apophyses which have a lower volume than the lower grade central areas.
- The arsenic grade for the Zone 3 model is significantly higher than the mean of the data. There is little arsenic data available for this zone and the data tends to occur around the edges. As the amount of data is small and the data arrangement poor the model is susceptible to the position of the few high grade values.
- Only a small portion of Zone 4 contains KICO data, there being no silver, germanium, cobalt or cadmium data in the Gécamines data. The estimate is susceptible to extrapolation of the higher and lower grade composites on the fringes of the KICO data that do not well represent the data mean.
- Large differences between the model grade and the data grade occur for several elements in Zone 5. There are a low number of composites available to estimate the grade of the zone and the model is very susceptible to the position of high or low grade samples. This portion of the Kipushi model represents only 0.3% of the total Kipushi model and does not represent a significant risk to the estimate.
- Large differences between the model grade and the data grade occur for lead and cobalt in Zone 6. The difference in the lead values is due to a cluster of high grade lead samples extrapolated into an area of the model with no lead data. A protuberance of the model is well informed by high grade cobalt values which represent a small model volume. This portion of the Kipushi model represents only 0.5% of the total Kipushi model and does not represent a significant risk to the estimate.
- Large differences between the data and model grades occur in Zone 7. This zone is informed by six drillholes with highly variable grades and is very susceptible to the data arrangement.

Table 14-11
Comparison between drillhole and model data values.

Variable	Data Mean	Data Mean (Capped)	Model Mean	% Difference Model vs Capped data
		Zone 1		
Cu %	2.89	2.86	2.68	-6.3%
Pb %	0.11	0.09	0.09	-0.1%
Zn %	3.60	3.60	4.75	31.8%
S %	11.56	11.56	12.01	3.9%
As %	0.24	0.23	0.20	-13.4%
Ag g/t	18.8	18.8	16.5	-12.2%
Ge ppm	14.2	13.8	19.7	42.5%
Co ppm	193	119	205	73.0%
Cd ppm	192	187	241	28.5%
Density	3.24	3.24	3.27	1.0%
		Zone 2		
Cu %	1.09	1.06	0.81	-23.8%
Pb %	0.79	0.79	0.78	-0.7%
Zn %	28.17	28.17	29.55	4.9%
S %	23.15	23.15	22.94	-0.9%
As %	0.18	0.18	0.17	-6.0%
Ag g/t	13.7	13.5	15.1	11.9%
Ge ppm	47.9	47.5	44.8	-5.8%
Co ppm	16	13	14	3.3%
Cd ppm	1318	1318	1429	8.4%
Density	3.69	3.69	3.68	-0.3%
		Zone 3		
Cu %	1.85	1.82	1.58	-13.3%
Pb %	1.35	1.35	1.58	16.9%
Zn %	17.37	17.37	17.81	2.5%
S %	21.35	21.35	21.48	0.6%
As %	0.23	0.23	0.28	21.7%
Ag g/t	-	-	12.8	
Ge ppm	-	-	41.4	
Co ppm	-	-	15	
Cd ppm	831	831	858	3.3%
Density	3.58	3.58	3.59	0.4%
		Zone 4		
Cu %	1.93	1.91	1.78	-6.8%
Pb %	0.04	0.03	0.02	-22.9%
Zn %	0.92	0.84	0.72	-14.7%
S %	2.89	2.89	2.50	-13.6%
As %	0.07	0.06	0.05	-9.1%
Ag g/t	8.0	8.0	8.9	11.4%
Ge ppm	0.8	0.8	0.9	23.2%
Co ppm	29	25	29	18.1%
Cd ppm	43	43	37	-13.8%
Density	3.13	3.13	3.13	-0.1%

Variable	Data Mean	Data Mean (Capped)	Model Mean	% Difference Model vs Capped data
		Zone 5		
Cu %	12.99	12.99	11.94	-8.1%
Pb %	0.22	0.05	0.08	54.6%
Zn %	14.59	14.59	16.40	12.4%
S %	21.65	21.65	21.64	0.0%
As %	0.51	0.37	0.33	-10.3%
Ag g/t	58.3	54.5	56.5	3.6%
Ge ppm	20.7	20.7	22.9	10.7%
Co ppm	179	98	117	19.7%
Cd ppm	923	923	1091	18.2%
Density	3.71	3.71	3.70	-0.2%
		Zone 6		
Cu %	6.48	6.48	6.41	-1.1%
Pb %	0.77	0.77	1.02	32.5%
Zn %	25.94	25.94	23.94	-7.7%
S %	25.81	25.81	23.07	-10.6%
As %	0.20	0.20	0.18	-10.3%
Ag g/t	122.2	122.2	115.4	-5.5%
Ge ppm	61.4	61.4	61.9	0.8%
Co ppm	163	104	84	-18.9%
Cd ppm	1479	1479	1421	-3.9%
Density	3.80	3.80	3.66	-3.8%
		Zone 7		
Cu %	2.99	2.99	2.75	-8.1%
Pb %	0.00	0.00	0.01	
Zn %	22.42	22.42	29.37	31.0%
S %	24.17	24.17	27.16	12.4%
As %	2.33	2.33	2.08	-10.7%
Ag g/t	14.0	14.0	14.3	1.9%
Ge ppm	125.3	125.3	173.4	38.4%
Co ppm	99	88	96	8.6%
Cd ppm	1480	1480	1899	28.3%
Density	3.71	3.71	3.81	2.7%

14.9 Mineral Resource Classification

Classification of the Kipushi Mineral Resource was based on confidence in the data, confidence in the geological model, grade continuity and variability and the frequency of the drilling data. The main considerations in the classification of the Kipushi Mineral Resource are as follows:

- The data have been collected by KICO and Gécamines. The KICO data have been collected using current industry standard principles; however the quality of the Gécamines data is less certain. KICO has endeavoured to verify the Gécamines data by a programmes of re-sampling and twin drilling in the Big Zinc and portions of the Fault Zone which yielded reasonable comparisons.
- The Gécamines data is incomplete in several aspects; notably not all of the elements of interest were analysed and the sampling was selective in some of the drillholes. A rigorous validation exercise was completed that resulted in many of the Gécamines holes being rejected for use in the grade estimate.

- Large areas of the Fault Zone and *Série Récurrenté* and the entire Southern Zinc zone are only informed by Gécamines drillholes. The Big Zinc has been well drilled by KICO as well as a portion of the *Série Récurrenté* and Fault Zone.
- The geological framework of the Mineral Resource is well understood as are the controls to the mineralization.
- The Mineral Resource has been densely drilled on sections spaced 15 m apart, although areas of the *Série Récurrenté* and down dip areas of the Fault Zone are less well drilled.
- Variogram ranges are well in excess of the drillhole spacing.
- The grade model validates reasonably well, although suffers from a lack of data for several elements notably silver, germanium and cobalt, as these assays were not available in the database constructed from the Gécamines data.
- Kipushi Mine has an extensive mining history and the continuity of the mineralized bodies has been established through mining.

Given the aforementioned factors the Kipushi Mineral Resource was classified using the following criteria:

- One area of the Big Zinc and adjacent Fault Zone was classified as Measured. The spacing of the KICO drillholes in this area is less than 20 m and there is high confidence in the interpretation of the mineralized extents.
- Where informed predominantly by KICO drilling, and with a drillhole spacing of closer than 50 m, the Mineral Resource was classified as Indicated. This applies to the majority of the Big Zinc, the Fault Zone in the vicinity of the Big Zinc and an area of the *Série Récurrenté*. Consideration of the proximity to the areas of historic mining was made, as in general these will be of lower risk.
- For areas of the Mineral Resource predominantly informed by Gécamines drillholes, the Mineral Resource was classified as Inferred. This applies to all of the Southern Zinc and large areas of the Fault Zone and *Série Récurrenté*.
- The Splay Zone was classified as Inferred. This zone is informed by six KICO drillholes, many of which are drilled at a close angle to the plane of the mineralization. Grades in this area are variable and the interpretation of the mineralized extents is tenuous.
- Extrapolation of the Big Zinc Zone was limited to a maximum of 15 m, the complex shape of the deposit negated against extrapolation with any confidence. The Fault Zone and *Série Récurrenté* are highly continuous and the down dip extent was limited to 50 m from the drillhole intersections.

The classified areas are shown in Figure 14-13 for the Big Zinc, Figure 14-14, for the Fault Zone and Figure 14-15 for the Série Récurrenté.

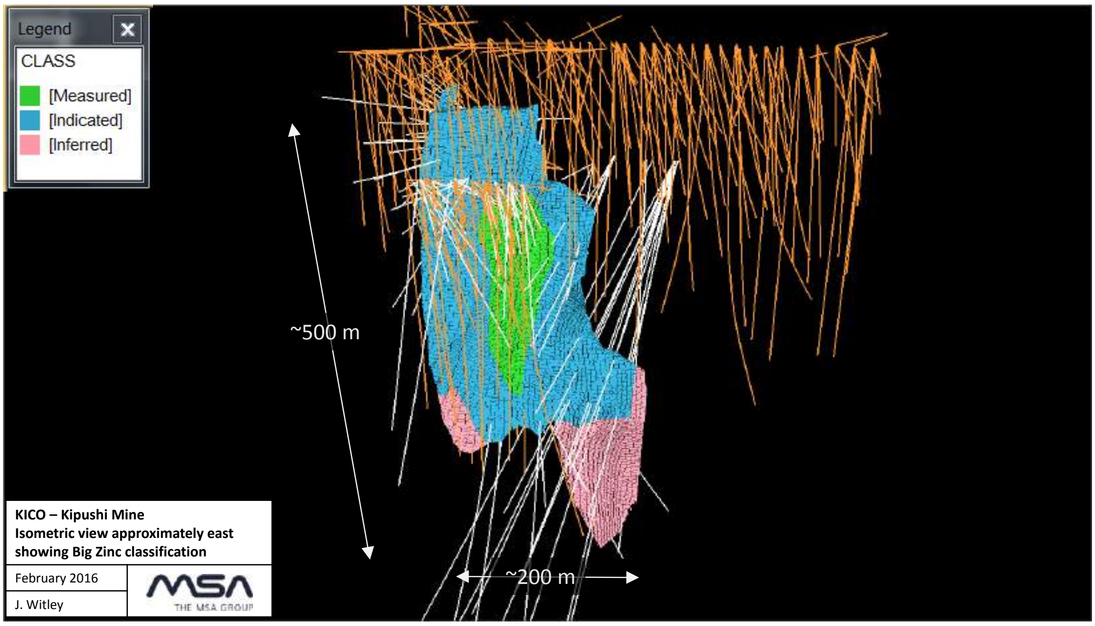
To the best of the Qualified Person's knowledge there are no environmental, permitting, legal, tax, socio-political, marketing or other relevant issues which may materially affect the Mineral

Resource estimate as reported in this technical report, aside from those mentioned in Item 4 of this report.

The Mineral Resources will be affected by further infill and exploration drilling, which may result in increases or decreases in subsequent Mineral Resource estimates. Inferred Mineral Resources are considered to be high risk estimates that may change significantly with additional data. It cannot be assumed that all or part of an Inferred Mineral Resource will necessarily be upgraded to an Indicated Mineral Resource as a result of continued exploration. The Mineral Resources may also be affected by subsequent assessments of mining, environmental, processing, permitting, taxation, socio-economic and other factors.

Figure 14-13

Mineral Resource Classification, Big Zinc – Isometric View Looking approximately east



Blue = Indicated

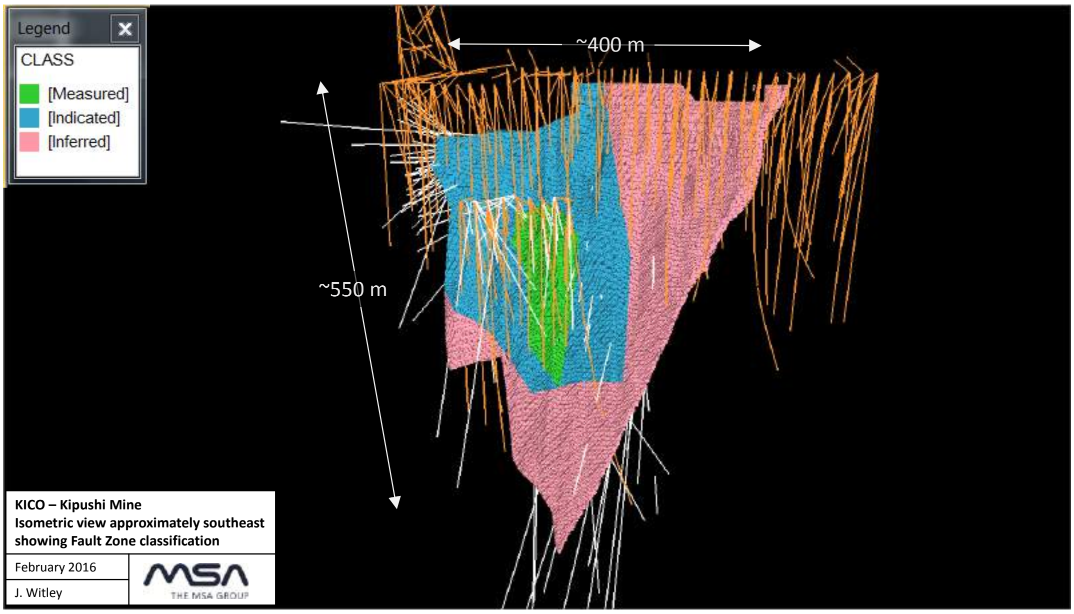
Red = Inferred

White traces = KICO drillholes

Orange traces = Gécamines drillholes

Figure 14-14

Mineral Resource Classification, Fault Zone – Isometric View Looking approximately northwest



Blue = Indicated

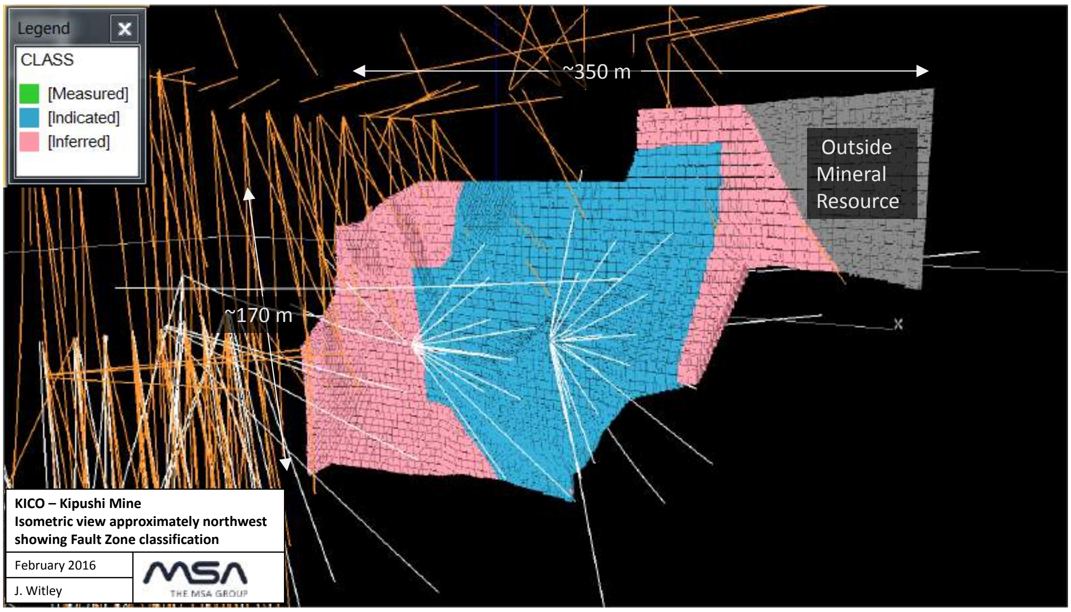
Red = Inferred

White traces = KICO drillholes

Orange traces = Gécamines drillholes

Figure 14-15

Mineral Resource Classification, Série Récurrenté – Isometric View Looking approximately Southeast



Blue = Indicated

Red = Inferred

White traces = KICO drillholes

Orange traces = Gécamines drillholes

14.10 Depletion of the Mineral Resource

The grade model includes areas that have previously been mined by Gécamines and an area to the southwest inside Zambia.

14.10.1 Mined out Areas

Mined out areas were supplied by KICO. These were simplified into cohesive areas, so that isolated remnants were not included in the Mineral Resource estimate, and then used for depletion of the model. In addition, all of the model above 1,150 m below surface was removed, extensive mining having taken place in the levels above. There is potential for additional Mineral Resources to exist above 1150 level but this will require investigation in terms of mineralization remaining and reasonable prospects for economic extraction of the remnant areas.

14.10.2 Zambia-DRC Border

The mineralization at Kipushi straddles the DRC-Zambia border, however the exact location of the position of the border is uncertain at Kipushi, there being no officially surveyed border line available for the area.

KICO commissioned a professional land surveyor (Mr DJ Cochran - Pr.MS, PLATO, SAGI of CAD Mapping Aerial Surveyors based in Tswane, South Africa) to determine the position of the border as accurately as possible (Cochran, 2015).

Mr Cochran located the position of four of the original border beacons (probably from the early 1930’s) and surveyed them using high precision GNSS post processing systems (on ITRF2008/WGS84). Together with information obtained by interviewing local inhabitants and from the Zambian Department of Survey and Lands in Lusaka, a pragmatic border line was interpreted (Figure 14-16). Mr Cochran is confident that the pragmatic border line best represents the most likely border line. The interpreted border line generally fits to the surveyed beacons to within ±0.5 m and follows the general trend of the watershed in the area.

Figure 14-16

Google Earth Image Showing Position of DRC-Zambia Border

The border from Google Earth is shown in yellow and the pragmatic border line in green

Source- Google Earth and Cochran 2015

The pragmatic border line was projected vertically to the Kipushi mineralization models and all modelled mineralization on the Zambian side of the border line was discounted from the Mineral Resource estimate.

14.11 Mineral Resource Statement

The Mineral Resource was estimated using The Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum (CIM) Best Practice Guidelines and is reported in accordance with the 2014 CIM Definition Standards, which have been incorporated by reference into National Instrument 43-101 – Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects (NI 43-101). The Mineral Resource is classified into the Measured, Indicated and Inferred categories as shown in Table 14-12 for the predominantly zinc-rich bodies and in Table 14-13 for the predominantly copper-rich bodies.

The Measured and Indicated, and Inferred Mineral Resource for the zinc-rich bodies has been tabulated using a number of cut-off grades as shown in Table 14-14 and Table 14-15 respectively and Table 14-16 and Table 14-17 for the copper rich bodies.

For the zinc-rich zones the Mineral Resource is reported at a base case cut-off grade of 7.0% Zn, and the copper rich zones at a base case cut-off grade of 1.5% Cu. Given the considerable revenue which will be obtained from the additional metals in each zone, MSA considers that mineralization at these cut-off grades will satisfy reasonable prospects for economic extraction. It should be noted that Mineral Resources that are not Mineral Reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability and the economic parameters used to assess the potential for economic extraction is not an attempt to estimate Mineral Reserves, the level of study so far carried out being insufficient with which to do so.

Table 14-12
Kipushi Zinc-Rich Mineral Resource at 7% Zn cut-off grade, 23 January 2016

Zone	Category	Tonnes (Millions)	Zn %	Cu %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
Big Zinc	Measured	3.59	38.39	0.67	0.36	18	17	54
	Indicated	6.60	32.99	0.63	1.29	20	14	50
	Inferred	0.98	36.96	0.79	0.14	7	16	62
Southern Zinc Zone	Indicated	0.00	-	-	-	-	-	-
	Inferred	0.89	18.70	1.61	1.70	13	15	43
Total	**Measured**	**3.59**	**38.39**	**0.67**	**0.36**	**18**	**17**	**54**
	Indicated	**6.60**	**32.99**	**0.63**	**1.29**	**20**	**14**	**50**
	Measured & Indicated	**10.18**	**34.89**	**0.65**	**0.96**	**19**	**15**	**51**
	Inferred	**1.87**	**28.24**	**1.18**	**0.88**	**10**	**15**	**53**
			Contained Metal Quantities					
Zone	**Category**	**Tonnes (Millions)**	**Zn Pounds (Millions)**	**Cu Pounds (Millions)**	**Pb Pounds (Millions)**	**Ag Ounces (Millions)**	**Co Pounds (Millions)**	**Ge Ounces (Millions)**
Big Zinc	Measured	3.59	3035.8	53.1	28.7	2.08	0.13	6.18
	Indicated	6.60	4797.4	91.9	187.7	4.15	0.20	10.54
	Inferred	0.98	797.2	17.1	3.0	0.23	0.03	1.96
Southern Zinc Zone	Indicated	0.00	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.00	0.00	0.00
	Inferred	0.89	368.6	31.8	33.5	0.38	0.03	1.23
Total	**Measured**	**3.59**	**3035.8**	**53.1**	**28.7**	**2.08**	**0.13**	**6.18**
	Indicated	**6.60**	**4797.4**	**91.9**	**187.7**	**4.15**	**0.20**	**10.54**
	Measured & Indicated	**10.18**	**7833.3**	**144.9**	**216.4**	**6.22**	**0.33**	**16.71**
	Inferred	**1.87**	**1168.7**	**49.6**	**36.8**	**0.61**	**0.06**	**3.21**

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur.*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*
5. *The cut-off grade calculation was based on the following assumptions: copper price of 2.97 USD/lb, mining cost of 50 USD/tonne, processing cost of 10 USD/tonne, G&A and holding cost of 10 USD/tonne, 90% copper recovery and 96% payable copper.*

Table 14-13
Kipushi Copper-Rich Mineral Resource at 1.5% Cu cut-off grade, 23 January 2016

Zone	Category	Tonnes (Millions)	Cu %	Zn %	Pb %	Ag g/t	Co ppm	Ge g/t
Fault Zone	Measured	0.14	2.78	1.25	0.05	19	107	20
	Indicated	1.01	4.17	2.64	0.09	23	216	20
	Inferred	0.94	2.94	5.81	0.18	22	112	26
Série Récurrenté	Indicated	0.48	4.01	3.82	0.02	21	56	6
	Inferred	0.34	2.57	1.02	0.06	8	29	1
Fault Zone Splay	Inferred	0.35	4.99	15.81	0.005	20	127	81
Total	**Measured**	**0.14**	**2.78**	**1.25**	**0.05**	**19**	**107**	**20**
	Indicated	**1.49**	**4.12**	**3.02**	**0.07**	**22**	**165**	**15**
	Measured & Indicated	**1.63**	**4.01**	**2.87**	**0.06**	**22**	**160**	**16**
	Inferred	**1.64**	**3.30**	**6.97**	**0.12**	**19**	**98**	**33**

			Contained Metal Quantities					
Zone	**Category**	**Tonnes (Millions)**	**Cu Pounds (Millions)**	**Zn Pounds (Millions)**	**Pb Pounds (Millions)**	**Ag Ounces (Millions)**	**Co Pounds (Millions)**	**Ge Ounces (Millions)**
Fault Zone	Measured	0.14	8.5	3.8	0.2	0.09	0.03	0.09
	Indicated	1.01	93.2	59.1	1.9	0.75	0.48	0.64
	Inferred	0.94	61.1	120.9	3.8	0.68	0.23	0.79
Série Récurrenté	Indicated	0.48	42.4	40.5	0.2	0.32	0.06	0.09
	Inferred	0.34	19.4	7.7	0.4	0.09	0.02	0.01
Fault Zone Splay	Inferred	0.35	38.9	123.3	0.0	0.23	0.10	0.92
Total	**Measured**	**0.14**	**8.5**	**3.8**	**0.2**	**0.09**	**0.03**	**0.09**
	Indicated	**1.49**	**135.7**	**99.6**	**2.1**	**1.08**	**0.54**	**0.73**
	Measured & Indicated	**1.63**	**144.1**	**103.4**	**2.3**	**1.16**	**0.58**	**0.82**
	Inferred	**1.64**	**119.4**	**251.8**	**4.3**	**1.00**	**0.35**	**1.73**

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur.*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds.*
5. *The cut-off grade calculation was based on the following assumptions: copper price of 2.97 USD/lb, mining cost of 50 USD/tonne, processing cost of 10 USD/tonne, G&A and holding cost of 10 USD/tonne, 90% copper recovery and 96% payable copper.*

Table 14-14
Kipushi Zinc-Rich bodies Measured and Indicated Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off	Tonnes	Zn	Zn Pounds	Cu	Pb	Ag	Co	Ge
Zn%	(Millions)	%	(Millions)	%	%	g/t	ppm	g/t
5	10.46	34.12	7870.0	0.65	0.95	19	15	50
7	**10.18**	**34.89**	**7833.3**	**0.65**	**0.96**	**19**	**15**	**51**
10	9.78	35.99	7757.4	0.63	0.98	19	15	52
12	9.50	36.72	7689.4	0.62	1.00	19	15	53
15	9.06	37.85	7559.1	0.59	1.01	20	15	54

Notes:

5. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
6. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
7. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
8. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds*

Table 14-15
Kipushi Zinc-Rich bodies Inferred Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off	Tonnes	Zn	Zn Pounds	Cu	Pb	Ag	Co	Ge
Zn%	(Millions)	%	(Millions)	%	%	g/t	ppm	g/t
5	1.89	27.98	1168.8	1.19	0.88	10	15	53
7	**1.87**	**28.24**	**1165.7**	**1.18**	**0.88**	**10**	**15**	**53**
10	1.82	28.85	1154.8	1.17	0.88	10	15	54
12	1.75	29.47	1139.8	1.15	0.87	10	15	55
15	1.56	31.42	1082.1	1.08	0.83	10	15	57

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds*

Table 14-16
Kipushi Copper-Rich bodies Indicated Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off	Tonnes	Cu	Cu Pounds	Zn	Pb	Ag	Co	Ge
Cu%	(Millions)	%	(Millions)	%	%	g/t	ppm	g/t
1.0	2.56	3.00	169.2	2.01	0.05	17	114	11
1.5	**1.63**	**4.01**	**144.1**	**2.87**	**0.06**	**22**	**160**	**16**
2.0	1.17	4.92	126.6	3.66	0.08	26	202	19
2.5	0.95	5.54	115.8	4.06	0.08	29	227	20
3.0	0.82	5.99	108.0	4.32	0.08	30	244	20

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds*

Table 14-17
Kipushi Copper-Rich bodies Inferred Mineral Resource grade tonnage table, 23 January 2016

Cut Off	Tonnes	Cu	Cu Pounds	Zn	Pb	Ag	Co	Ge
Cu%	(Millions)	%	(Millions)	%	%	g/t	ppm	g/t
1.0	2.40	2.64	139.8	5.85	0.09	16	79	29
1.5	**1.64**	**3.30**	**119.4**	**6.97**	**0.12**	**19**	**98**	**33**
2.0	1.24	3.81	104.2	7.29	0.13	20	109	33
2.5	0.90	4.40	87.6	8.01	0.13	21	113	34
3.0	0.68	4.95	74.0	8.38	0.15	21	118	34

Notes:

1. *All tabulated data has been rounded and as a result minor computational errors may occur*
2. *Mineral Resources which are not Mineral Reserves have no demonstrated economic viability.*
3. *The Mineral Resource is reported as the total in-situ Mineral Resource.*
4. *Metal quantities are reported in multiples of Troy Ounces or Avoirdupois Pounds*

The Mineral Resource was limited to deeper than approximately 1,150 m below surface, extensive mining having taken place in the levels above. Below 1,150 m, some mining has taken place, which has been depleted from the model for reporting of the Mineral Resource. The maximum depth of the Mineral Resource of 1,810 m below surface is dictated by the location of the diamond drilling data, although sparse drilling completed by KICO below this elevation indicates that the mineralization has potential to continue at depth. The Mineral Resource occurs close to the DRC-Zambia Border and the Mineral Resource has been constrained to the area considered to be within the DRC.

The Mineral Resource estimate has been completed by Mr J.C. Witley (BSc Hons, MSc (Eng.)) who is a geologist with 27 years' experience in base and precious metals exploration and mining as well as Mineral Resource evaluation and reporting. He is a Principal Resource Consultant for The MSA Group (an independent consulting company), is a member in good standing with the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP) and is a Fellow of the Geological Society of South Africa (GSSA). Mr Witley has the appropriate relevant qualifications and experience to be considered a "Qualified Person" for the style and type of mineralization and activity being undertaken as defined in National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure of Mineral Projects.

14.12 Comparison with Previous Estimates

The Mineral Resource estimate reported as at 23 January 2016 is the first Mineral Resource for Kipushi reported in accordance with CIM. A Historical Estimate was completed by Techpro Mining and Metallurgy (Techpro) in 1997 and reported by IMC Group Consulting Limited (IMC) in a NI 43-101 Technical Report entitled "Kipushi Project, Democratic Republic of Congo, September 2012".

The reader is cautioned that a Qualified Person has not done sufficient work to classify the Historical Estimate as current Mineral Resources and the issuer is not treating the Historical Estimate as current Mineral Resources. The Historical Estimate should be regarded as no longer relevant, it having been superseded by the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource. The Historical Estimate was prepared by Techpro in accordance with the 1996 edition of the JORC Code but would not meet current JORC or CIM standards.

A summary of the Historical Estimate reported by IVN is shown in Table 14-18. The South and North zones together represent the copper rich zones. MSA considers that the South zone is approximately equivalent to the Fault Zone and the North zone is approximately equivalent to the *Série Récurrenté*.

Table 14-18
Summary of Kipushi Historical Estimate (Techpro 1997)

		South			North			Big Zinc		
Category	**Level**	**Tonnes**	**Cu**	**Zn**	**Tonnes**	**Cu**	**Zn**	**Tonnes**	**Cu**	**Zn**
	(m below surface)	**(millions)**	**%**	**%**	**(millions)**	**%**	**%**	**(millions)**	**%**	**%**
Measured	100 to 1150	-	-	-	3.7	2.01	2.05	-	-	-
Measured	1150 to 1295	2.5	2.47	18.58	1.9	4.19	4.35	0.8	1.16	33.52
Indicated	1295 to 1500	1.5	2.27	17.04	2.6	4.09	5.25	3.9	0.68	39.57
Total M&I	**1150 to 1500**	**4.0**	**2.40**	**18.00**	**4.5**	**4.13**	**4.87**	**4.7**	**0.76**	**38.54**

The total Measured and Indicated Historical Estimate for the combined South and North areas is 8.5 million tonnes at 3.32% Cu and 11.04% Zn, excluding the area from 100 m to 1150 m below surface. The tonnage is more than double that of the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource estimate and the copper grade is approximately 9% lower, assuming a 1.5% copper cut-off grade. In contrast, the Big Zinc Historical Estimate is approximately one third of that of the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource estimate and 10% higher in grade, assuming a 7% zinc cut-off grade.

Significant differences between Techpro's Historical Estimate and the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource estimate are explained as follows:

- A portion of the Historical Estimate classified as Measured by Techpro (3.5 Mt at 2.01% Cu and 2.05% Zn) occurs from 100 m to 1,150 m below surface. This area was not included in the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource estimate as extensive mining has taken place in these areas and it is uncertain whether this material can be accessed for extraction.
- The Historical Estimate may have included material that is now considered to be outside of the DRC and within Zambia.
- The definition of the zinc-rich and copper-rich zones is likely to be different between the two estimates.
- The Historical Estimate was based on the results of Gécamines drilling whereas the 23 January 2016 Mineral Resource estimate used Gécamines drilling data, where appropriate, combined with significant amount of KICO drilling data completed since then. Differences in estimates using different datasets will occur.
- The extent of the Big Zinc has been expanded based on the KICO drilling that intersected mineralisation outside of the area of the Historical Estimate.
- The Techpro Historical Estimate was based on estimations by Gécamines that used outdated sectional interpretation methods, rather than the more modern geostatistical estimation techniques used for this Mineral Resource estimate.

- The Historical Estimate is based on the Gécamines estimate which applied 1970s metal prices which were not changed thereafter. Ground having less than 1% Cu and 7% Zn was considered to be sterile, however no precise cut-off grades were applied.

14.13 Assessment of Reporting Criteria

The checklist in Table 14-19 of assessment and reporting criteria summarises the pertinent criteria for this Mineral Resource estimate in accordance with CIM guidelines and MSA's assessment and comment on the estimates.

Table 14-19 Checklist of Reporting Criteria.	
Drilling techniques	All drillholes were diamond drill cored and drilled from underground (mostly NQ) at various inclinations. The drillholes were generally drilled along section lines spaced 15 m apart. The Ivanhoe drilling was largely inclined downwards at various orientations designed to intersect specific targets. Gécamines drillholes that were drilled in a similar orientation as the plane of mineralization were not used for grade estimation as samples from these holes would not be considered representative.
Logging	All of the drillholes were geologically logged by qualified geologists. The logging was of an appropriate standard for Mineral Resource estimation.
Drill sample recovery	Core recovery was observed to be excellent for the Ivanhoe drilling. The Gécamines drillhole cores were in various conditions having been stored for long periods of time.
Sampling methods	Half core samples were collected continuously through the mineralized zones after being cut longitudinally in half using a diamond saw. The Ivanhoe drillhole samples were taken at nominal 1 m intervals, which were adjusted to smaller intervals in order to honour the mineralization styles and lithological contacts. From KPU051 onwards the nominal sample interval was adjusted to 2 m intervals which were adjusted to smaller intervals in order to honour the mineralization styles and lithological contacts. MSA's observations indicated that the routine sampling methods applied by Ivanhoe were of a high standard and suitable for evaluation purposes. Sampling by Gécamines was selective and lower grade portions of the mineralized intersections were not always sampled. Sample lengths were based on homogenous zones of mineralization and varied from less than 1 m to greater than 10 m. Gécamines drillholes were not used for grade estimation where well mineralized sample lengths were considered to be excessive.
Quality of assay data and laboratory tests	All sample preparation was completed by staff from Ivanhoe and its affiliated companies at its own laboratories. From June 1 to December 31, 2014, samples were prepared at Kolwezi by staff from the company's exploration division. From January to November 2015, samples were prepared at Kamoa by staff from that project. Mr M Robertson from MSA inspected Ivanhoe's preparation facilities in the DRC. Representative pulverised subsamples were all assayed at the Bureau Veritas (BV) laboratory in Perth, Australia. Samples were dried at between 100°C and 105°C and crushed to a nominal 70% passing 2 mm, 800 g to 1000 g subsamples were taken by riffle split, and the subsamples were milled to 90% passing 75 µm. Crushers and pulverisers were flushed with barren quartz material after each sample. Grain size monitoring tests were conducted on samples labelled duplicates, which comprise about 5% of total samples. Subsamples collected for assaying and witness samples comprise the following: three 40 g samples for DRC government agencies; a 140 g sample for assaying at BV; a 40 g sample for portable XRF analyses; and a 90 g sample for office archives. Approximately 5% of the sample batches sent to BV were comprised of certified reference materials, 5% of blanks and 5% crushed reject duplicates. The CRMs were certified for Zn, Cu, Pb and Ag and no CRMs were used to monitor the accuracy of As, Cd, Co and Ge. BV conducted Zn, Cu and S assays by sodium peroxide fusion with an ICP-OES finish; Pb, Ag, As, Cd, Co, Ge, Re, Ni, Mo, V, and U assays by sodium peroxide fusion with an ICP-MS finish; Ag and Hg aqua regia digestion assays with an ICP-MS finish; and Au, Pt and Pd by lead collection fire assay with an ICP-OES finish. For Ag, aqua regia digest values were used below approximately 50 ppm and sodium peroxide fusion values were used above approximately 50 ppm. A variety of certified reference materials as well as blanks and duplicates were routinely inserted and assayed by BV as part of its own internal QAQC processes. The QAQC measures used by Ivanhoe revealed the following:

	• The certified reference materials demonstrated that the assays for Zn, Cu and Pb were overall unbiased. Where CRM failures were identified, the CRM and a group of samples before it and after it were submitted for re-assaying of the failed elements in most cases. Silver values reported by BV tended to be lower than the certified mean by between approximately 2% and 15% on average for the individual CRMs. • Blank samples indicated that no significant contamination occurred for most of the programme. Blank results from the earlier part of the exploration programme showed more elevated concentrations than ideal, however most of the failures are in the several hundred ppm range and are well below cut-off grades that may be considered for this mineralization. • Duplicate precision levels are within reasonably expected ranges. A check assay programme was carried out by Ivanhoe. This consisted of re-assaying of 210 samples for Zn, Cu Pb, Ag, S, As, Cd, Co, Au, Hg, Ge and Re from KPU01 to KPU025 at Genalysis (Perth) and SGS (Perth). Both laboratories validated the BV assays within reasonable limits. Historical sampling and assaying was carried out by Gécamines at the Kipushi laboratory. Sample analysis was carried out by a four-acid digest and AAS finish for Cu, Co, Zn and Fe. The GBC Avanta AAS instrument originally used for the assays is still operational. Sulphur analysis was carried out by the "classical" gravimetric method. No information is available on the QAQC measures implemented for the Gécamines samples and therefore the Gécamines sample assays should be considered less reliable than the Ivanhoe sample assays.
Verification of sampling and assaying	MSA observed the mineralization in the cores and compared it with the assay results. MSA found that the assays generally agreed with the observations made on the core. A re-sampling exercise of eight Gécamines drillholes was completed by Ivanhoe in 2013 under MSA's direction, and included QAQC protocols. The samples were sent to BV for analysis. The results revealed that Gécamines zinc and copper assays compared reasonably well overall with the BV assays. Ten of the Gécamines holes were verified by Ivanhoe twin drilling. The zinc, copper and lead values compared well overall between the twin drilling and original holes.
Location of data points	All of the Ivanhoe drillhole collars have been surveyed. Down-hole surveys were completed for all of the Ivanhoe holes. The method of location for the Gécamines drillhole collars is uncertain and not all of the holes were surveyed down-the-hole.
Tonnage factors (in situ bulk densities)	Specific gravity determinations were made for the Ivanhoe drillhole samples using the Archimedes principal of weight in air versus weight in water. A regression formula was developed using metal grades to apply density to the samples based on the Ivanhoe measurements.
Data density and distribution	The drillholes were drilled along section lines spaced 15 m apart. Along the section lines the drillholes intersected the mineralization between 10 m and 50 m apart in the Big Zinc and adjacent Fault Zone Mineral Resource area, with drilling being sparser, up to approximately 100 m apart, in the deeper parts of the Fault Zone. The *Série Récurrenté* zone was drilled along 15 m spaced lines by Gécamines with drillhole intersections approximately 50 m apart. Ivanhoe completed a number of drillhole fans over a portion of the *Série Récurrenté,* which resulted in intersections approximately 20 m apart. The number of drillhole intersections used to estimate each zone is as follows: • Fault Zone: 122 of which 45 were drilled by Ivanhoe. • Big Zinc: 100 of which 51 were drilled by Ivanhoe • Southern Zinc Zone: 26 of which none were drilled by Ivanhoe • *Série Récurrenté:* 57 of which 32 were drilled by Ivanhoe. • Fault Zone Splay: 6 of which all were drilled by Ivanhoe These were sourced from 107 Gécamines holes that intersected the mineralized

	zones and were accepted for the estimate and 84 Ivanhoe drillholes from the series KPU001 to KPU097. The Gécamines holes were not assayed for Ag, Ge and Co.
Database integrity	The Ivanhoe data were stored in an Access database. MSA compiled a digital database of the Gécamines hard copy data.
Dimensions	The Fault Zone forms a steeply dipping irregular tabular body of variable thickness. The area defined as a Mineral Resource is approximately 420 m in strike in the up-dip areas and tapers off at depth due to the limited amount of drilling. The thickness varies from approximately 1 m to more than 20 m with typical thicknesses being between 5 m and 10 m. The Big Zinc Mineral Resource is an irregular pipe-like body elongated vertically and along the Fault Zone strike direction. It extends for a maximum of approximately 220 m along strike, 100 m in plan thickness and extends over 600 m down-dip with a steep southerly plunge. The Southern Zinc Zone is elongate in the alignment of the Fault Zone and extends for approximately 200 m in strike and dip and is typically between 5 m and 15 m wide. The *Série Récurrenté* extends along strike for approximately 250 m, 300 m in the dip direction and is between 20 m and 70 m wide. The Fault Zone Splay is an irregular steeply dipping body that extends along strike for approximately 60 m, 250 m in the dip direction and is between 4 m and 20 m wide.
Geological interpretation	The mineralized intersections in drill core are clearly discernible. Three dimensional wireframe models were created for the zones of mineralization based on a grade threshold of 1.0 % Cu or 5% Zn. The grade shells were aligned with the geological understanding of the mineralization trends. The mineralization is a result of large scale replacement of dolomitic horizons by hydrothermal fluids, and as a result the model boundaries are irregular.
Domains	Seven domains were created: • Fault Zone • Big Zinc • A copper-silver rich zone within the Big Zinc • Southern Zinc Zone • *Série Récurrenté* • A high grade (>5%) copper-rich zone within the *Série Récurrenté* • Fault Zone Splay– high grade copper-zinc-germanium
Compositing	Sample lengths were composited to 2 m. All sample lengths were retained in the compositing process so that the majority of composites were close to 2 m long, however composites as narrow as 0.70 m and as wide as 2.81 m occur. There is no relationship between composite length and grade.
Statistics and variography	Copper distributions are positively skewed with co-efficients of variation (CV) being approximately 1.4 for both of the copper-rich zones. Zinc distributions in the zinc-rich zones are not skewed and grades are distributed evenly across the grade ranges. The CV is approximately 0.8 for both zones. Cadmium behaves similarly to zinc and there is a strong relationship between the two metals. Lead, germanium, silver and cobalt distributions are positively skewed with high CVs. Sulphur and density distributions are similar to those of copper and zinc in their respective zones. Missing sulphur and density values were applied to the drillholes based on regression formulae using copper plus zinc plus lead grades for each zone. A regression formula for missing cadmium values was based on its strong relationship with zinc. Normal Scores variograms were calculated in the plane of the mineralization, down-hole

	and across strike. Variogram ranges differ widely between elements. The variogram models for zinc and cadmium are similar there being a strong relationship between these elements. For the Fault Zone, the copper variogram has a range of 60 m on strike, 70 m in the plunge direction and 10 m across strike. The zinc variogram for Big Zinc has a range of 80 m down dip, 60 m along strike and 30 m across dip. The copper variogram for *Série Récurrenté* has a range of 150 m in the plane of mineralization and 20 m across strike. There were insufficient data to create variograms for the Southern Zinc Zone and so the Big Zinc variogram was applied with some modifications for the orientation of this zone. High grade copper zones were assigned variogram parameters from zones of similar grade.
Top or bottom cuts for grades	Top cuts were sparingly applied to outlier values that were above breaks in the cumulative probability plot.
Data clustering	Although the data are irregularly distributed there is no preferential clustering in the higher grade areas.
Block size	Block models of 5 m N by 5 m E by 5 m RL were created with a minimum sub-cell of 1 m.
Grade estimation	Grades were estimated using Ordinary Kriging into parent cells. Indicators were used to distinguish between zones of internal waste within the mineralized zone. The indicator thresholds used were 0.5% for Cu and 5.0% for Zn. A minimum number of 6 and a maximum of 12 two metre composites were required in each of the above and below threshold populations for each variable to be estimated. Search distances were set at the respective variogram range and increased by 1.5 times the variogram range should enough samples not be collected for estimation by the first search. A further expanded search that collected a minimum of 5 and maximum of 10 samples was used to ensure that the entire model was estimated. A maximum of 4 samples were allowed to estimate a block from a single hole. There were no silver, germanium or cobalt data available in the Southern-Zinc zone. The average values of the Big Zinc zone were applied and therefore these estimates are considered to be of low confidence.
Resource classification	The drill spacing over much of the area is sufficient to estimate grades and model the geological framework to a high degree of confidence. There is high confidence in the accuracy and integrity of the Ivanhoe data. The Gécamines data was collected using protocols that are not considered optimal today and despite reasonable validation through re-sampling and twin drilling the Gécamines data should be considered to be of low confidence. On this basis the Mineral Resource was classified as Indicated when the drillhole spacing is generally closer than a 50 m grid in the plane of mineralization and predominantly informed by Ivanhoe drilling data, while considering its location relative to the mined out areas. The Mineral Resource was classified as Inferred when informed by Gécamines drilling data even when the drilling grid was less than 50 m in order to reflect the lower confidence in this data. Where the confidence in the geological interpretation of the deposit is high and the model is informed by Ivanhoe drillholes at a spacing of approximately 20 m the Mineral Resource was classified as Measured. The Big Zinc body is complex in shape and pinches out rapidly in areas. For this reason extrapolation of the Mineral Resource was limited to less than 15 m away from the drillhole grid. The copper zones exhibit stronger geological continuity and down-dip extrapolation was limited to a maximum of 50 m.
Mining cuts	No mining cuts were considered in the estimate. The dimension and shape of the mineralization makes it amenable to a variety of well-established mining methods.

Metallurgical factors or assumptions	The mineralization is in sulphide form and amenable to flotation. The grades of deleterious elements were estimated as follows.
Legal aspects and tenure	Kipushi Corporation Sprl (KICO) is a Joint Venture between Gécamines and Ivanhoe established for the exploration, development and production of Kipushi. Exploitation permit (*Permis d'Exploitation* 12434) grants KICO the right to mine and process copper, cobalt, zinc, silver, lead and germanium from the Kipushi Project until 03 April 2024.
Audits, reviews and site inspection	The following review work was completed by MSA: • Mike Robertson of the MSA Group visited the project from 20 February 2013 to 22 February 2013 and from 22 April 2013 to 24 April 2013. The Gécamines cores were examined and the sampling and logging records were verified against the cores. A check sampling exercise was initiated under supervision. Jeremy Witley of the MSA Group and the Qualified Person for this Mineral Resource estimate visited the project from 8 to 11 September 2014 and 11 to 13 May 2015.

Zinc Rich Zones (Zn cut-off-grade 7%)	**Arsenic (%)**	**Cadmium (ppm)**
Measured and Indicated	0.17	1725
Inferred	0.27	1169
Copper Rich Zones Cu cut-off-grade 1.5%)	**Arsenic (%)**	**Cadmium (ppm)**
Measured and Indicated	0.36	164
Inferred	0.78	339

15 MINERAL RESERVE ESTIMATES

No Mineral Reserve estimates have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

16 MINING METHODS

No mining method studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

17 RECOVERY METHODS

No recovery method studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

18 PROJECT INFRASTRUCTURE

No project infrastructure studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

19 MARKET STUDIES AND CONTRACTS

No market studies and contracts studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

20 ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES, PERMITTING AND SOCIAL OR COMMUNITY IMPACT

The QP (Michael Robertson) is not qualified to provide comment on environmental, permitting and social or community impact matters associated with the Project and has fully relied on information provided by Ivanhoe for the completion of Item 20.

No warranty or guarantee, be it express or implied, is therefore made by the QP (Michael Robertson) or MSA with respect to the completeness or accuracy of the information provided in Item 20.

20.1 Background

The Kipushi municipality was originally developed around an existing informally planned village. At the peak of operations it housed a mine staff of approximately 2,500 workers and their families.

The current estimate of the Kipushi population is 150,000 people. As the infrastructure is based on a design of 20,000 people, there is tremendous pressure on infrastructure, which has not been well maintained.

Kipushi municipality is surrounded by small-scale subsistence agriculture, allocated by tribal authorities. Given the population density, there is no available agricultural land available for new allocation.

Although there is a significant environmental legacy from previous operation of the mine, Gécamines have been exonerated by the *Direction de Protection de L'Environnment Miniere* (DPEM), and there is no legal obligation for KICO to undertake rehabilitation. However, there is a strong social obligation to remediate this legacy, which should be factored into the project development plan, particularly at the end of the mine's life.

Sustainability for the Kipushi project should focus on the urban population, including continued operation of the potable water pump station, prevention of flooding and water ponding in the community for malaria control, community health initiatives including Fionet, and support to local suppliers to the mine. Although there is considerable small scale agriculture in the impact area, this is seen as not self-sustainable due to the natural infertility of the soil together with the cost of tillage and fertilisers.

The biggest challenge to the successful implementation of sustainability programmes is the mindset of paternalism inherited from the previous state-run enterprises. The community expectation is that KICO will provide all services and infrastructure rehabilitation, which is unaffordable.

20.2 Previous Work

- Environmental Report on the Kipushi Zinc-Copper mine, Democratic Republic of Congo, by The Mineral Corporation, for Kipushi Resources International Limited (KRIL), 2007

- *Etude d'Impact Environnmental et Plan de Gestion Environnmental du Projet* (EIA/PGEP), PER 12234, 12349 et 12350 for KICO sprl by DRC Green – EMEC, 2011
- Environmental Management Plan (EMPP) for Tailings Processing Permits PER 12234, 12349 and 12350, by Golder Associates for KICO, 2014
- *Report d'Audit Environnmental in situ Relatif a l'Obtention de l'Attestation de Liberation des Obligations Environnmentales des PER 12234, 12249, et 12250; PE 12434 de la Gécamines Cedes a KICO sprl, Republique Democratiques du Congo, Minitere du Mines, Secretariat General de Mines, Direction de Protection de L'Environnment Miniere*, 2011

The 2011 EIA by DRC Green is considered definitive for the tailings, as these have been filed with regulatory authorities. Although the Golder reports are more-current and comprehensive, these have not been filed with regulatory authorities, but are the basis for industry-standard best environmental practice policies to be adopted by KICO as the baseline, before advancing to the construction and production phases of the project.

20.3 Force Majeure Condition

The legal condition of *force majeure* on PE12434 was applied in mid-2011 as a result of the mine flooding, which was a result of failure of the main underground pumping station at 1200 mL in Shaft 5. *Force majeure* remains in effect to this date. The *force majeure* condition does not apply to the PERs.

The condition of *force majeure* suspends some of the regulatory requirements of environmental reporting and discounts on some regulatory services, including SNEL invoicing for electricity supply, and BECT inspections of conveyances.

Force majeure is lifted on notification to the Mines Ministry that the conditions which caused the implementation of *force majeure* are corrected, which is assumed to be on commissioning of the main underground pump station at the 1200 mL in Shaft 5.

20.4 Environmental Audit – Removal of Environmental Obligations from KICO

As agreed in Amendment No. 5 to the JV Agreement wherein 'Gécamines shall obtain from the relevant government authority, in order to release it from its environmental obligations in relation to the metallurgical and mining operations carried out before the Implementation Date, a "declaration of release from environmental obligations" and it shall hand this over to KICO before the Implementation Date'.

Gécamines obtained this release from the DPEM in August 2011 with the conclusion:

> "…Given that Gécamines has run its exploitation activities while considering the reduction and the rehabilitation on the perimeters of the PER n°12234 12349 12350, and the PE12434 on assignment to KICO Sprl, Gécamines should be freed from the environmental obligations

on these perimeters except the part used for treatment by the CMSK and the retention basin it uses.

So, the Kipushi Corporation Company will be responsible of damages it causes on the environment once it will be installed in the perimeter and must take already necessary measures to prepare an environmental plan relative to its activities and allowing him to encounter negative impacts of its exploitation. "

Therefore, KICO is only responsible for the environmental impacts going forward, although there may be a social obligation to mitigate some of the historical impacts, particularly on closure of the new operations at life of mine.

20.5 Golder Associates Africa ESHIA Baseline Study

Golder Associates Africa has completed several reports on the Kipushi project, including:

- TSF Trade-off Study for the future mine tailings disposal facilities, November 2013
- Environmental Baseline (as at November 2011) and Liabilities Assessment
- Environmental Management Plan (EMPP) Kipushi Tailings, February 2014
- Assessment of Potable Water Supply infrastructure, August 2012
- ESHIA Baseline Study, May 2015 including components of:
    - Aquatic Biology Assessment
    - Visual Baseline
    - Terrestrial Ecology
    - Radiological Baseline
    - Health Impact Assessment
    - Noise study
    - Social Risk Assessment
    - Socio-Economic Baseline
    - Geochemistry Baseline
    - Surface Water baseline
    - Stakeholder Engagement Plan
    - Groundwater Baseline
    - Air Quality baseline
    - Soil and Land-use baseline

The ESHIA Baseline study used the International Finance Corporation (IFC) guidelines as a standard, which includes the Equator Principles version 3 (EP3); with the exception that no primary health data in the Kipushi impact area was collected.

The primary impacts on the natural and social environment due to mining and related industry were considered to be:

- Air Quality: Fugitive dust from historical Tailings Storage Facilities (TSFs), unsurfaced roads, air pollution from vehicle traffic, clay brick firing, veldt fires, and charcoal burning.
- Land Use: Progressive urbanisation and loss of area available for agriculture, ownership issues, lack of soil fertility (natural), caused (in part) by population influx due to economic opportunities in the mining sector.
- Surface Water: Kipushi mine water discharge is generally within DRC regulatory discharge limits, but downstream mixing with the effluent from the New Concentrator Kipushi (NCK) operated by Gécamines exceeds regulatory limits for several metals (particularly Co) and electrochemical parameters, but after settling and filtering of effluent by the wetlands in TSF3 the discharge is generally within regulatory limits.
- Groundwater: Contamination of groundwater by infiltration of surface water through the TSFs due to the mine dewatering.
- Acid Rock Drainage (ARD): Although the tailings have moderate ARD potential, this is generally mitigated by the neutralisation capacity of the host dolomite rocks.
- Noise: Two main noise sources were identified, the Shaft 4 surface ventilation fan, and the NCK.
- Radiation: Although two localised sources of elevated radiation were identified related to stockpiles and waste from the Luiswishi mine (the feed material for the NCK), the average dose rates for the project fall within the average global dose rates.
- Biological Environment: Deforestation and degradation of natural habitat resulting in loss of biodiversity due to population influx and lack of land management.
- Socio Economic Environment: Economic dependence on mining related business.
- Health Concerns: Malaria remains the highest mortality cause, followed by TB, and STDs (including HIV/AIDS/ARC), exacerbated by poor quality health care, although not a direct impact caused by mining, the loss of the paternal legacy of state owned enterprises increased the concerns.
- Artisanal Miners: Volatile and vulnerable group comprising some 20% of the local population as primary or supplementary means of livelihood. KICO has a good working relationship with formalised cooperatives.

20.6 KICO Internal Studies

KICO has also undertaken several studies to complement the Golder ESHIA Baseline, including:

- Annual survey of primary, secondary and tertiary schools in the district, including enrolment, available capacity, and tuition fees.
- Socio-economic study of the artisanal mining population.
- Survey of health care facilities.
- Survey of Employee's residence locations and proximity to medical service providers.

20.7 KICO Community and Social Activities

KICO has undertaken a number of community development and cultural activities, including:

- Operation, electricity supply, maintenance and security of the potable water pump station (this is the single highest cost community relations effort, at an estimated $90,000/month).
- Emergency repairs on an as-needed basis to the potable water mains reticulation to the municipality.
- Logistics support to the Oral Polio Vaccination (OPV) campaign by the Kipushi Territory Health Zone.
- Annual contributions and attendance at the coronation anniversary of Grand Chief Kaponda of the Lamba tribal group headquartered in Mimbulu village.
- Small animal husbandry, small scale agriculture test plots.
- Student apprenticeships from technical schools in Kipushi for training in the machine, garage and welding shops.
- Support to the Fionet malaria diagnostics system implementation, to be installed at 42 health care facilities in the impact Kipushi Health Zone.

20.8 KICO Plans Going Forward

The next steps in the environmental management of the project include:

- Ongoing monitoring of surface and groundwater, air quality and climate to meet regulatory reporting requirements.
- Completion of a regulatory Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.
- Longer term livelihood change for artisanal miners, focused on SMEs to provide services to the Kipushi mine development.

21 CAPITAL AND OPERATING COSTS

No capital and operating cost studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

22 ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

No economic analysis studies have been undertaken as this is not considered an Advanced Property in terms of NI 43-101.

23 ADJACENT PROPERTIES

There are no adjacent properties that have any material bearing on the Kipushi project.

24 OTHER RELEVANT DATA AND INFORMATION

No additional information or explanation is deemed necessary to make this Technical Report understandable and not misleading.

25 INTERPRETATION AND CONCLUSIONS

The KICO underground drilling programme has confirmed that zinc and copper mineralization extend below the limit of the historical estimates to at least 1,825 m below surface, being the deepest intersection recorded (drillhole KPU079). The mineralization is open at depth.

The geological work carried out by KICO has resulted in enhanced understanding of the nature and controls on the Kipushi mineralization.

In addition to confirming substantial widths and zinc grades within the Big Zinc, some of the KICO holes have also intersected zones of high-grade copper and precious metals within the Big Zinc. A high grade massive sulphide lense within the *Série Récurrenté* and a germanium-rich zone that occurs as a splay off the Fault Zone at depth have also been defined.

A substantial Mineral Resource has been defined at Kipushi. The high grade nature of the Big Zinc has been confirmed and the extent of this zone has been considerably increased from that defined by previous workers.

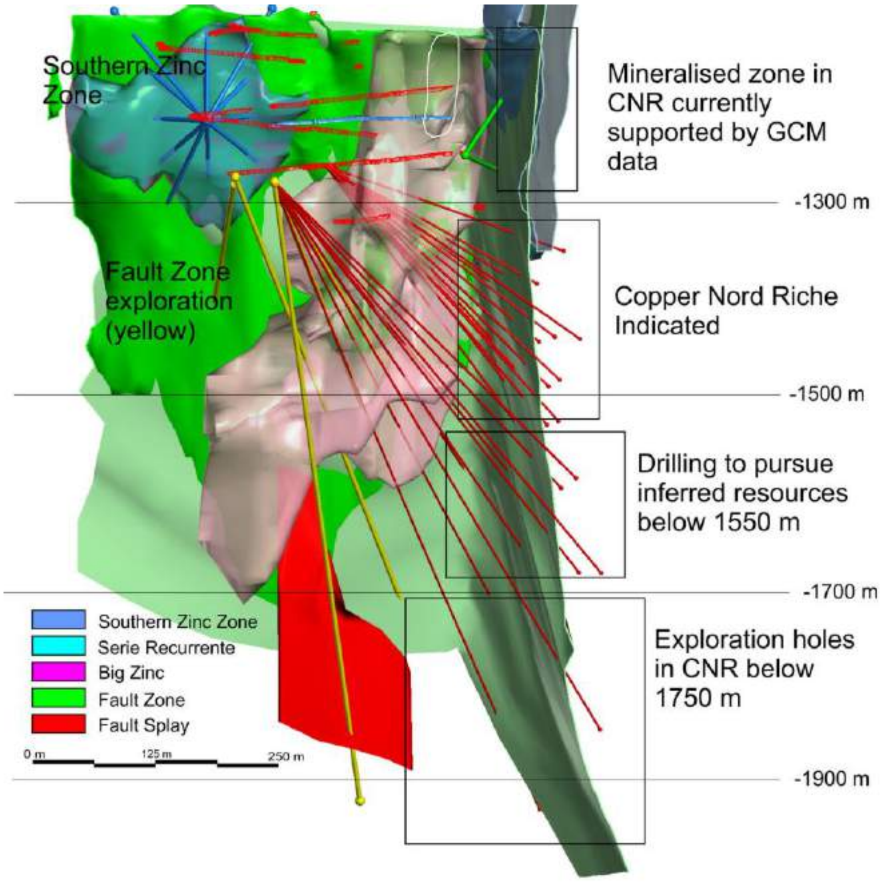
26 RECOMMENDATIONS

Approximated 16,500 m of drilling are recommended to aim to achieve both an Indicated Mineral Resource category on the Southern Zinc and Copper *Nord Riche* mineralized zones and to explore additional parts of the deposit that were not drilled during the 2014-2015 drilling campaign. Zones with the planned drilling are shown in Figure 26-1. A summary of the total metres is shown in Table 26-1.

Four holes are planned in the upper portion of the Copper *Nord Riche* to support previous Gécamines drilling and to attempt to bring this to an Indicated Mineral Resource category. Similarly, the Southern Zinc Zone is not supported by Gécamines drilling and an additional 13 holes are recommended to attempt to achieve an Indicated Mineral Resource category. Further drilling is required to explore the Fault Zone and Copper *Nord Riche* at depth. The morphology of the deposit, together with the proximity of the supporting infrastructure to the steeply plunging mineralised zone, limit the options for deep pierce points within the Kipushi deposit.

The cost of the drilling programme is estimated at US$3.96 million. In the opinion of the QP (Mike Robertson), the recommended work programme is considered appropriate and warranted in order to upgrade the Mineral Resource status of the Kipushi Project.

Figure 26-1
Planned drilling at Kipushi



Source: Ivanhoe Mines (2015)

Table 26-1
Planned drilling by zone

Planned drilling metres to achieved Mineral Resource class			
Mineralised Zone	**Indicated**	**Inferred**	**Exploration Drilling**
Copper *Nord Riche* (supporting Gécamines drilling)	704	-	-
Copper *Nord Riche*	4 589	4 301	2 390
Fault Zone	-	-	2 806
Southern Zinc Zone	1 571	-	-

27 REFERENCES

Armstrong, R.A., Master, S., Robb, L.J. (2005) Geochronology of the Nchanga Granite, and constraints on the maximum age of the Katanga Supergroup, Zambian Copperbelt. Journal of African Earth Sciences 42, pages 32–40.

Barron, J.W., Broughton, D.W., Armstrong, R.A., Hitzman, M.W. (2003) Petrology, geochemistry and age of gabbroic bodies in the Solwezi area, northwestern Zambia. In: Cailteux, J. (Ed.), Proterozoic Sediment-Hosted Base Metal Deposits of Western Gondwana. IGCP 450 Conference and Field Workshop, Lubumbashi, p75-77.

Batumike, M.J., Cailteaux, J.L.H. and Kampunzu, A.B. (2007) Lithostratigraphy, basin development, base metals deposits, and regional correlations of the Neoproterozoic Nguba and Kundulungu rock successions, central African Copperbelt. Gondwana Research, 11, p432-447.

Briart, G. (1947) Le gisement de Kipushi. Union Minière du Haut Katanga Geological Department (Likasi, DRC). Ubpublished report.

Brooks, T. (2015) Geological setting and mineralization. Internal report for Ivanhoe Mines.

Brooks, T. (2014) A new look at the Kipushi Cu-Zn-Ge-Ag-Pb deposit, Democratic Republic of Congo. Presented at the GSSA African Exploration Showcase Day on November 7, 2014.

Cailteux, J. (1994) Lithostratigraphy of the Neoproterozoic Shaba-type (Zaire) Roan Supergroup and metallogenisis of associated stratiform mineralization. Journal of African Earth Sciences, **19**, pp.:279-301.

Chabu, M. (1990) Metamorphism of the Kipushi carbonate-hosted Zn-Pb-Cu deposit (Shaba, Zaire). *In* Spry and Bryndzia (eds), Regional Metamorphism of Ore Deposits, p27-47.

Chabu, M. (2003) Alteration of the host dolomite adjacent to massive zinc mineralization of the Kipushi Pb-Zn-Cu deposit (Katanga, DRC) and incidences on exploration methods. Third Workshop of IGCP 450: Proterozoic Sediment-hosted Base Metal Deposits of Western Gondwana. Lubumbashi, D.R. Congo. July 14-24, 2003, p138-141.

Cosi, M., de Bonis, A., Gosso, G., Hunziker, J., Martinotti, G., Moratto, S., Robert, J.P., Ruhlman, F. (1992) Late Proterozoic thrust tectonics, high-pressure metamorphism and uranium mineralization in the Domes area, Lufilian Arc, northwestern Zambia. Precambrian Research 58, p215 – 240.

Cox, D.P. and Bernstein, L.R. (1986). Descriptive model of Kipushi Cu-Pb-Zn. USGS.

De Magnée, I. and François, A. (1988) The origin of the Kipushi (Cu, Zn, Pb) deposit in direct relation with a Proterozoic salt diapir, Copperbelt of Central Africa, Shaba, Republic of Zaire, in Friedrich, G.H., *et al.*, eds., Base metal sulfide deposits: Berlin, Springer-Verlag, p. 74–93.

Ehrlich, R.P and Brady, B.S. (1996) A Review of the Kipushi Mine of é in the Republic of Zaire for America Mineral Fields Inc. Watts, Griffis and McOuat Ltd. Consulting Geologists and Engineers, 12 June 1996, Revised 20 June 1996.

Heijlen, W., Banks, D.A., Muchez, P., Stensgard, B.M. and Yardley, B.W.D. (2008) The nature of mineralizing fluids of the Kipushi Zn-Cu deposit, Katanga, Democratic Republic of Congo: Quantitative fluid inclusion analysis using laser ablation ICP-MS and bulk crush – leach methods. Economic Geology, v103, pp 1159 – 1482.

Hitzman, M.W., Broughton, D., Selley, D., Woodhead, J., Wood, D., Bull, S. (2012) The Central African Copperbelt: diverse stratigraphic, structural, and temporal settings in the world's largest sedimentary copper district. Society of Economic Geologists, Special Publication, 16, 487-514.

Hoffmann, K.-H., Condon, D.J., Bowring, S.A., Crowley, J.L. (2004) U – Pb zircon dates for the Neoproterozoic Ghaub Formation, Namibia: constraints on Marinoan glaciation. Geology 32, pages 817 – 820.

Hubert, A-D (2013). Democratic Republic of the Congo. Report prepared by McGuireWoods LLP in Bourassa, M. and Turner J. (2013) Mining in 31 Jurisdictions Worldwide. Published by Getting the Deal Through. Accessed 12 February 2015 at http://www.mcguirewoods.com/news-resources/publications/international/mining-drcongo.pdf

Intiomale, M.M. and Oosterbosch, R. (1974) *Géologie et géochimie du gisement de Kipushi, Zaire. Centenaire de la Société Géologique de Belgique, Gisements stratiformes et Provinces cuprifères,* pp 123-164.

Intiomale, M.K. (1982) Le Gisement Zn-Pb-Cu de Kipushi (Shaba – Zaire). Etude Geologique et Metallogenique. DSc thesis submitted to Universite Catholique de Louvain. 170p excluding maps and figures.

Ivanhoe Mines (2014a) Annual Information Form for the year ended December 31, 2013. 114p.

Ivanhoe Mines (2014b) Ivanhoe Mines' drilling program extends depths of rich zinc and copper zones at the Kipushi Mine in D.R Congo. News Release dated April 15, 2014.

Ivanhoe Mines (2014c) First assay results from Ivanhoe Mines' drilling program confirms high zinc and copper grades at the Kipushi Mine in D.R Congo. News Release dated July 14, 2014.

Ivanhoe Mines (2014d) Additional high-grade zinc and copper assay results returned from drilling program at the Kipushi Mine in D.R. Congo. News Release dated September 5, 2014.

Ivanhoe Mines (2014e) Ivanhoe Mines reports exceptionally high-grade silver, zinc and copper assay results from Big Zinc drillholes at the Kipushi Mine in the Democratic Republic of Congo. News Release dated November 24, 2014.

Ivanhoe Mines (2015a) Annual Information Form for the year ended December 31, 2014. 114p.

Ivanhoe Mines (2015b) Ivanhoe Mines reports additional high-grade zinc, copper, silver and germanium drill results from ongoing exploration program at the Kipushi Mine in the Democratic Republic of Congo. News Release dated February 17, 2015.

Ivanhoe Mines (2015c) Ivanhoe Mines reports additional high-grade zinc, copper, silver and germanium drill results from ongoing exploration program at the Kipushi Mine in the Democratic Republic of Congo. News Release dated April 13, 2015.

Jackson, M.P.A., Warin, O.N., Woad, G.M. and Hudec, M.R. (2000) Neoproterozoic allochthonous salt tectonics during the Lufilian orogeny in the Katangan Copperbelt, central Africa. GSA Bulletin; March 2003; v. 115; no. 3; p. 314–330

Kampunzu, A.B., Cailteux, J.L.H., Kamona, A.F., Intiomale, M.M. and Melcher, F. (2009) Sediment-hosted Zn-Pb-Cu deposits in the Central African Copperbelt. Ore Geology Reviews, 35, p263-297.

Kampunzu, A.B., Tembo, F., Matheis, G., Kapenda, D., Huntsman-Mapila, P. (2000) Geochemistry and tectonic setting of mafic igneous units in the Neoproterozoic Katangan Basin, Central Africa: implication for Rodinia break up. Gondwana Research 3, pages 125 – 153.

Kelly, V., Bennett, J. and Smith, D.J.F. (2012) Kipushi Project, Democratic Republic of Congo. NI 43-101 Technical Report. IMC Group Consulting Limited. Dated 5 September 2012. 48p.

Key, R.M., Liyungu, A.K., Njamu, F.M., Somwe, V., Banda, J., Mosley, P.N., Armstrong, R.A. (2001) The western arm of the Lufilian Arc in NW Zambia and its potential for copper mineralizaton. Journal of African Earth Sciences 33, 503 – 528.

Rainaud, C., Master, S., Armstrong, R.A., Robb, L.J. (2005) Geochronology and nature of the Paleoproterozoic basement in the Central African Copperbelt (Zambia and the Democratic Republic of Congo), with regional implications. Journal of African Earth Sciences 42, 1 – 31.

Robertson, M. (2013) Kipushi Big Zinc – Orientation Sample Results. Internal report prepared by The MSA Group for Kipushi Coporation SPRL and dated 13 August 2013. 31p.

Robertson, M. (2014) Kipushi Big Zinc – Results of Core Re-sampling Programme. Internal report prepared by The MSA Group for Kipushi Coporation SPRL and dated 29 May 2014. 104p.

Selley, D., Broughton, D., Scott, R., Hitzman, M., Bull, S., Large, R., McGoldrick, P., Croaker, M., Pollington, N., and Barra, F. (2005) A new look at the geology of the Zambian Copperbelt. Economic Geology 100th Anniversary Volume, pp 965-1000.

Sketchley, D.A. (2015a) Kipushi Project - QAQC Summary Report. Drill Holes: KPU-001 – KPU-087. Period: May 1, 2014 to September 1, 2015. Report prepared for Ivanhoe Mines Ltd and Kipushi Corporation SPRL and dated May 13, 2015.

Sketchley, D.A. (2015b) Kipushi Mine Project. Drilling Evaluation Program QAQC Check Assay Review. Period ending September 2014. Report prepared for Ivanhoe Mines Ltd and Kipushi Corporation SPRL covering drillholes KPU001 to KPU025 and dated March 30, 2015.

Sketchley, D.A. (2015c) Kipushi Mine Project. Drilling Evaluation Program QAQC Check Assay Review. Period: September 2014 to April 2015. Report prepared for Ivanhoe Mines Ltd and Kipushi Corporation SPRL covering drillholes KPU026 to KPU072 and dated August 10, 2015.

Trueman, E.A.G. (1998) Carbonate-hosted Cu±Pb±Zn (Tsumeb or Kipushi Type). In Geological Fieldwork 1997, British Columbia Ministry of Employment and Investment, Paper 1998-1, pp24B1-4.

Tshileo, P.M., Walisumbu, C.K., and Kaluendi, K. (2003) The Kipushi Zn-Pb-Cu Deposit. Third Workshop of IGCP 450: Proterozoic Sediment-hosted Base Metal Deposits of Western Gondwana. Lubumbashi, D.R. Congo. July 14-24, 2003, p210-213.

Unrug, R. (1988) Mineralization controls and source of metals in the Lufilian Fold Belt, Shaba (Zaire), Zambia and Angola. Econ. Geol. 83, p1247-128.

Wells, A.P., Scott, N.C. and Hawke, J.N. (2003) Technical Report of the Kipushi Mine Zinc Project in Katanga Province of the Democratic Republic of Congo. IMC Group Consulting Limited. Effective Date 1 August 2003.

28 DATE AND SIGNATURE PAGE

This report titled "Kipushi Project Mineral Resource Estimate, January 2016" with an effective date of 23 January 2016, prepared by MSA on behalf of Ivanhoe Mines Limited and dated 11 March 2016 was prepared and signed by the following authors:

Dated at Johannesburg, South Africa
11 March 2016

Jeremy C Witley
BSc (Hons), MSc (Eng), Pr. Sci Nat.
Principal Resource Consultant
The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd

"Signed"
[Jeremy C Witley]

Dated at Johannesburg, South Africa
11 March 2016

Michael J Robertson
MSc, Pr,Sci.Nat.
Principal Consultant
The MSA Group (Pty) Ltd

"Signed"
[Michael J Robertson]

Dated at Adelaide, Australia
11 March 2016

Bernard Peters
Fellow AusIMM (no. 201743)
BEng (Mining)
Technical Director - Mining
OreWin Pty Ltd

"Signed"
[Bernard Peters]

APPENDIX 1:

Glossary of Technical Terms

Glossary of Technical Terms

Abbreviations	Description
AAS	Atomic absorption spectrometry
CAMI	*Cadastre Minière*
Co	Chemical symbol for cobalt
CRM	Certified reference material
Cu	Chemical symbol for copper
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EMPP	Environmental Management Protection Plan
Gécamines	*La Générale des Carrières et des Mines*
IMC	IMC Group Consulting Limited
IP	Induced Polarization
ICP-AES	Inductively coupled plasma, atomic emission spectroscopy
KICO	Kipushi Corporation SPRL
Ma	Million years ago
NI 43-101	Canadian National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects*
PE	*Permis de Exploitation*
PER	*Certificats d'Exploitation des Rejets*
PR	*Permis de Recherches Minières*
QAQC	Quality assurance and quality control
QC	Quality control
QP	Qualified Person, as defined under Canadian National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects
RC	Reverse circulation drilling
S	Chemical symbol for sulphur
SNEL	*Société Nationale d'Electricité*
TSX	Toronto Stock Exchange
UMHK	*Union Minière du Haut Katanga*
XRF	X-Ray Fluorescence
~	Approximately
Term	**Description**
Allochthonous	A large block of rock which has been moved from its original site of formation, usually by low angle thrust faulting
Alteration	Changes in the mineralogical composition of a rock as a result of physical or chemical processes such as weathering or penetration by hydrothermal fluids
Anticline	A fold structure that is convex up and has its oldest rocks in its core.
Archaean	Belonging to the geological period between about 2 500 and 4 000 million years ago
Argillaceous	Fine-grained rock containing substantial amounts of clay minerals.
Basement	The rocks below a sedimentary platform or cover, or more generally any rock below sedimentary rocks or sedimentary basins that are metamorphic or igneous in origin.
Bornite	A copper sulphide mineral with chemical composition Cu_5FeS_4.
Breccia	A rock composed of broken fragments of rock cemented together by a finer-grained matrix,
Calcareous	Partly composed of calcium carbonate.
Carbonate	A rock, usually of sedimentary origin, composed primarily of calcium, magnesium or iron and CO_3. Essential component of limestones and marbles.
Chalcopyrite	$CuFeS_2$ - A major ore mineral of copper, and the most abundant copper-bearing mineral.

Term	Description
Cleavage	Foliation perpendicular to stress as a result of ductile deformation.
Craton	Large, and usually ancient, stable mass of the earth's crust comprised of various crustal blocks amalgamated by tectonic processes. A cratonic nucleus is an older, core region embedded within a larger craton.
Cretaceous	A geologic period and system from circa 145 to 65 million years ago
Diagenetic	The change of sediments or existing sedimentary rocks into a different sedimentary rock during and after rock formation (lithification), at temperatures and pressures less than that required for the formation of metamorphic rocks.
Diamictite	A type of lithified sedimentary rock that consists of nonsorted to poorly sorted terrigenous sediment containing particles that range in size from clay to boulders, suspended in a matrix of mudstone or sandstone.
Diamond drilling	Method of obtaining cylindrical core of rock by drilling with a diamond set or diamond impregnated bit
Dolomite	A mineral composed of calcium and magnesium carbonate; a rock predominantly comprised of this mineral is also referred to as dolomite or dolostone
Dolostone	A sedimentary carbonate rock that contains a high percentage of the mineral dolomite, $CaMg(CO_3)_2$.
Dyke	A type of sheet intrusion referring to any geologic body that cuts *discordantly* across pre-existing rocks
Eluvium	Incoherent material resulting from the chemical decomposition or physical disintegration of rock in situ
En echelon	(Of faults or veins) having a staggered parallel alignment
Evaporite	Sediment, including various salts, deposited from aqueous solution as a result of evaporation.
Fault	A fracture or fracture zone, along which displacement of opposing sides has occurred
Felsic	Relating to an igneous rock composed mainly of pale-coloured minerals including feldspars and silica
Fire Assay	Lead collection fire assay using carefully selected fluxes specially formulated for the mineralogy of each sample type. Samples submitted for ppb detection of gold are fused in a dedicated low level furnace, the resultant prill digested and gold content determined typically by AAS.
Fold	A planar sequence of rocks or a feature bent about an axis
Footwall	
Galena	PbS - The primary ore mineral of lead. Galena may contain significant amounts of silver as included silver sulfide mineral phases or as limited solid solution within the galena structure.
Georeference	Establishing location in terms of map projections or coordinate systems
Igneous	Igneous rock is formed through the cooling and solidification of magma or lava. Igneous rock may form with or without crystallization, either below the surface as intrusive (plutonic) rocks or on the surface as extrusive (volcanic) rocks.
Indicated Mineral Resource	An Indicated Mineral Resource is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity and grade or quality, densities, shape, and physical characteristics, can be estimated with a level of confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters, to support mine planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. The estimate is based on detailed and reliable exploration and testing information gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes that are spaced closely enough for geological and grade continuity to be reasonably assumed (CIM Definition Standards).

Term	Description
Induced Polarization	Induced polarization (IP) is a geophysical imaging technique used to identify subsurface materials and mineralization in particular. An electric current is induced into the subsurface through two electrodes, and voltage is monitored through two other electrodes. Time domain IP methods measure the voltage decay or chargeability over a specified time interval after the induced voltage is removed.
Inferred Mineral Resource	An Inferred Mineral Resource is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity and grade or quality can be estimated on the basis of geological evidence and limited sampling and reasonable assumed, but not verified, geological and grade continuity. The estimate is based on limited information and sampling gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trnches, pits, workings and drill holes (CIM Definition Standards).
Intracratonic	
Intrusive	An igneous rock that formed from magma that cooled and solidified within the Earth's crust
Joints	Regular planar fractures or fracture sets in massive rocks, usually created by unloading, along which no relative displacement has occurred
Limestone	A sedimentary rock containing at least 50% calcium or calcium-magnesium carbonates
Lineament	A significant linear feature of the earth's crust
Lithology	Rock type
Lithosphere	Mass of the mantle attached to the base of the crust that has a geological history related to that of the overlying crust, and that is cold and rigid relative to the deeper parts of the mantle
Mafic	Relating to an igneous rock composed primarily of dark-coloured magnesium- and iron-rich minerals
Magnetic survey	Geophysical survey measuring the magnetic field intensity of rocks at various stations
Measured Mineral Resource	A Measured Mineral Resource is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape, and physical characteristics are so well established that they can be estimated with confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters, to support production planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. The estimate is based on detailed and reliable exploration, sampling and testing information gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes that are spaced closely enough to confirm both geological and grade continuity (CIM Definition Standards).
Mesoproterozoic	Middle Proterozoic era of geological time, 1,600 to 1,000 million years ago
Mesothermal	Formed at depth at a moderately-high temperature in the range 200-300°C
Metamorphic	Relating to changes at depth in the mineral and chemical composition and texture of a solid rock caused by heat, pressure, chemical environment and shear stress
Metapelite	
Metasediment	A sedimentary rock that has shows evidence of having been subjected to metamorphism
Metavolcanic	A volcanic rock that has shows evidence of having been subjected to metamorphism
Mineral Resource	A Mineral Resource is a concentration or occurrence of diamonds, natural solid inorganic material, or natural solid fossilized organic material including base and precious metals, coal, and industrial minerals in or on the Earth's crust in such form and quantity and of such a grade or quality that it has reasonable prospects for economic extraction. The location, quantity, grade, geological characteristics and continuity of a Mineral Resource are known, estimated or interpreted from specific geological evidence and knowledge (CIM Definition Standards)

Term	Description
Mineralization	The process by which minerals are introduced into a rock resulting in the formation a mineral deposit
Neoproterozoic	A period of geological history at the end of the Proterozoic eon, dating from about 1 000 to 540 million years ago
Orogenic	Relating to the formation of structures such as folds and thrusts during a period of mountain-building
Pan-African	Relating to a collisional mountain-building event between about 750 and 550 million years ago
Peneplain	An area of very low to no topographic relief formed through extensive lateral erosion down to a local base level
Peperite	A sedimentary rock that contains fragments of igneous material and is formed when magma comes into contact with wet sediments
Precambrian	The span of geological time between formation of the Earth around 4500 Ma (million years ago) to the begnning of the Cambrian, around 542 Ma
Proterozoic	A period of geological history dating from about 2 500 to 540 million years ago, subdivided into the Palaeo-, Meso- and Neoproterozoic
Pyrite	FeS_2 - A common iron sulphide mineral
RC drilling	(Reverse Circulation) A percussion drilling method in which the fragmented sample is brought to the surface inside the drill rods, thereby reducing contamination
Pyrite	A bronze- or yellow-coloured iron sulphide mineral (FeS_2) which commonly forms cubes
Pyrrhotite	A reddish-brown, sometimes magnetic iron sulphide mineral which has a defective crystal structure from which some ferrous ions are lacking ($Fe_{1-x}S$)
Qualified Person	An individual who is an engineer or geoscientist with at least five years of experience in mineral exploration, mine development or operation or mineral project assessment, or any combination of these; has experience relevant to the subject matter of the mineral project and the technical report; and is a member or licensee in good standing of a professional association.
Resistivity survey	A geophysical survey used to locate buried features by mapping differences in the way that rocks conduct an electric current.
Renierite	a rare copper zinc germanium bearing sulfide mineral with composition $(Cu,Zn)_{11}(Ge,As)_2Fe_4S_{16}$
Sabkha	
Schist	A crystalline metamorphic rock having a foliated or parallel structure due to the recrystallisation of the constituent minerals
Sedimentary	Types of rock that are formed by the deposition of material at the Earth's surface and within bodies of water.
Shale	
Siliciclastic	Clastic noncarbonate sedimentary rocks that are almost exclusively silica-bearing, either as forms of quartz or other silicate minerals.
Silicification	
Siltstone	A rock intermediate in character between a shale and a sandstone. Composed of silt sized grains.
Sinistral	Left lateral movement of blocks along a fault

Term	Description
Sphalerite	(Zn,Fe)S - The main ore mineral of zinc consisting largely of zinc sulphide in crystalline form, but almost always contains variable iron. When pure (with little or no iron) it forms clear crystals with colours ranging from pale yellow (known as Cleiophane) to orange and red shades (known as Ruby Blende), but as iron content increases it forms dark, opaque metallic crystals (known as Marmatite).
Stratigraphy	A branch of geology which studies rock layers (strata) and layering (stratification). It is primarily used in the study of sedimentary and layered volcanic rocks.
Stockwork	
Strike	Horizontal direction or trend of a geological structure
Stromeyerite	
Sulphide	A mineral containing sulphur with a metal or semi-metal, e.g. pyrite
Supracrustal	Rocks that were deposited on the existing basement rocks of the earth's crust.
Syntectonic	A geologic process or event occurring during tectonic activity
Tectonic	Pertaining to the forces involved in, or the resulting structures of, movement in the earth's crust
Tennantite	A copper arsenic sulfosalt mineral with an ideal formula $Cu_{12}As_4S_{13}$.
Unconformity	An unconformity is a buried erosional or non-depositional surface separating two rock masses or strata of different ages, indicating that sediment deposition was not continuous